

Safe Harbor

Offering hope. Ending the silence.

Safe Harbor Lifeline

Project Manual

June 24, 2021
CRSA Project #

Construction Document Set
20-028



ARCHITECTURE
PLANNING
INTERIORS

649 E SOUTH TEMPLE
SALT LAKE CITY, UT 84102
801.355.5915
www.crsa-us.com



DUNN ASSOCIATES, INC
Consulting Structural Engineers



SPECTRUM
ENGINEERS



Prepared by
Kenneth E Wheadon

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 Procurement and Contracting Requirements

Not Used Provided by Others

DIVISION 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	Summary
012100	Allowances
012500	Substitution Procedures
012600	Contract Modification Procedures
012900	Payment Procedures
013100	Project Management and Coordination
013200	Construction Progress Documentation
014000	Quality Requirements
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
015723	Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control
016000	Product Requirements
017300	Execution
017700	Closeout Procedures
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data
017839	Project Record Documents
017900	Demonstration and Training
Appendix A	TC-721 Tax Exempt Form

DIVISION 02 EXISTING CONDITIONS

NOT USED

DIVISION 03 CONCRETE

032000 Concrete Rebar
033000 Cast-In-Place Concrete

DIVISION 04 MASONRY

NOT USED

DIVISION 05 METALS

051200 Structural Steel Framing

DIVISION 06 WOOD, PLASTICS and COMPOSITES

061000 Rough Carpentry
061600 Sheathing
061800 Glued-Laminated Construction
064113 Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets.

DIVISION 07 THERMAL and MOISTURE

071113 Bituminous Damp-proofing
072100 Thermal Insulation
072600 Vapor Retarders
072727 Self-Adhered Air Barrier
074113.16 Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels
074213.13 Formed Metal Wall Panels
074293 Soffit Panels
074646 Fiber-Cement Siding
075423 Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing
076200 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
077200 Roof Accessories
079200 Joint Sealants
079219 Acoustical Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 OPENINGS

081213	Hollow Metal Frames
081416	Flush Wood Doors
084113	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
087100	Door Hardware
088000	Glazing

DIVISION 09 FINISHES

092900	Gypsum Board
093013	Ceramic Tiling
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceiling
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories
096519.23	Resilient Vinyl Tile Flooring
099113	Exterior Painting
099123 -	Interior Painting

DIVISION 10 SPECIALTIES

101100	Visual Display Units
101419	Dimensional Letter Signage
101423.13	Room-Identification Signage
102239	Folding Panel Partitions
102600	Wall and Door Protection
102800	Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
104413	Fire Protection Cabinets
104416	Fire Extinguishers

DIVISION 11 EQUIPMENT

NOT USED

DIVISION 12 FURNISHINGS

122413 Roller Window Shades

123661.16 Solid Surfacing Countertops and Window Sills

DIVISION 14 CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

NOT USED

DIVISION 21 FIRE SUPPRESSION

NOT USED

DIVISION 22 PLUMBING

220517 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping

220518 Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping

220519 Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping

220523 General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping

220529 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment

220553 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment

220719 Plumbing Piping Insulation

221116 Domestic Water Piping

221119 Domestic Water Piping Specialties

221123 Domestic Water Pumps

221316 Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping

221319 Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties

221413 Facility Storm Drainage Piping

221423 Storm Drainage Piping Specialties

223400 Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters

224213.13 Commercial Water Closets

224216.16 Commercial Sinks

224713 Drinking Fountains

DIVISION 23 MECHANICAL

230513 Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment

230593 General Testing, Adjusting, Balancing and Commissioning

230713 Duct Insulation

231123 Facility Natural-Gas Piping

233113 Metal Ducts

233300 Air Duct Accessories

233423 HVAC Power Ventilators

233713 Diffusers, Registers and Grilles

238239.19 Wall and Ceiling Unit Heaters

DIVISION 26 ELECTRICAL

260519 Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables

260523 Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables

260526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems

260529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems

260533 Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems

260543 Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems

260544 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling

260548.16 Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems

260553 Identification for Electrical Systems

260573.13 Short-Circuit Studies

260573.16 Coordination Studies

260573.19 Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis

260923 Lighting Control Devices

262413	Switchboards
262416	Panelboards
262726	Wiring Devices
262813	Fuses
265119	LED Interior Lighting
265213	Emergency and Exit Lighting
265613	Lighting Poles and Standards
265619	LED Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27 COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

Not Used – Provided by Others

DIVISION 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

Not Used – Provided by Others

DIVISION 31 EARTHWORK

310700	General Site Construction Requirements
311000	Site Clearing
312000	Earth Moving
315000	Excavation Support and Protection

DIVISION 32 EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

321216	Asphalt Paving
321313	Concrete Paving
321373	Concrete Paving Joint Sealants
328400	Irrigation systems
329300	Landscape Planting

DIVISION 33 UTILITIES

330500	Common Work Results for Utilities
331100	Water Utility Piping
333100	Sanitary Sewerage Piping
334100	Storm Utility Drainage Piping

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Contractor's use of site and premises.
- 4. Coordination with occupants.
- 5. Work restrictions.
- 6. Specification and Drawing conventions.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
- 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Safe Harbor - Lifeline

- 1. Project Location: 223 West 475 South Layton, Utah, 84041

- B. Owner: Safe Harbor Crisis Center.

- 1. Owner's Representative: [Kristen Floyd, Executive Dir. Phone: 801-660-6101 kristen@safeharborhope.org](mailto:kristen@safeharborhope.org)

- C. Architect: CRSA, 175 S Main Street, SLC, UT 84111, 801.355.5915

- 1. Architect's Representative: Laura Smith, AIA, lsmith@crsa-us.com, 801.355.5915.

- D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
1. Civil Engineering: Great Basin Engineering.
 - a. Civil Engineering's Representative: Coury Morris, Courym@greatbasineng.com, 801.394.4515.
 2. Landscape Architecture: Great Basin Engineering.
 - a. Landscape Architecture's Representative: James Zaugg, JZaugg@greatbasineng.com, 801.394.4515
 3. Structural Engineering: Dunn Associates, Inc..
 - a. Structural Engineer's Representative: Phil Miller, pmiller@dunn-se.com, 801.575.8877.
 4. Mechanical Engineering: Spectrum Engineers.
 - a. Mechanical Engineer's Representative: Charles Despain, cld@spectrum-engineers.com, 801.328.5151.
 5. Electrical Engineer: Spectrum Engineers.
 - a. Electrical Engineer's Representative: Michael Fackrell, mcf@spectrum-engineers.com, 801-401-8447.
- E. Construction Manager: Gramoll Construction.
1. Design-Builder Representative: John Thompson, joh.thompson@gramoll.com, 801.949.7441.
 2. Design-builder has been engaged for this Project to provide architectural and engineering services and to serve as Project's constructor. The terms "design-builder" and "Contractor" are synonymous.
- F. Web-Based Project Software: Project software will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.
1. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for using web-based Project software.

1.5 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. A one-story wood-framed construction 6795 SF Type 5B Office Building for Safe Harbor Crisis Center, including site improvements, parking lot and landscape areas and other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.

B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Unrestricted Use of Site: Each Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.
- B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to Work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.

1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, noisy work, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.

- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations and published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard.
 - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

1.4 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

- A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.
- B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.
- C. Costs of testing and inspection services not specifically required by the Contract Documents are Contractor responsibilities and are not included in the allowance.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance No. 1: Testing and Inspection Allowance: Include the sum of \$10,000.00 for testing Required by Division 31 Earth work and concrete to be provided by Owner, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Or other required Quality testing.

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Document 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for requirements for substitution requests prior to award of Contract.
 - 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form that is part of web-based Project management software or as acceptable to Architect.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.

- b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
 - 2. Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of web-based Project management software.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue through Construction Manager supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on Architects form.

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect or Construction Manager will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.

- d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect or form provided as part of web-based Project management software.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect] will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on form provided as part of web-based Project management software.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on form provided as part of web-based Project management software. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

1.8 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Architect may issue a Work Change Directive on form provided as part of web-based Project management software. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - 1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
 - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Document 004373 "Proposed Schedule of Values Form" for requirements for furnishing proposed schedule of values with bid.
 - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
 - 3. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule. Cost-loaded Critical Path Method Schedule may serve to satisfy requirements for the schedule of values.
 - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.

- b. Owner's name.
 - c. Owner's Project number.
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Architect's Project number.
 - f. Contractor's name and address.
 - g. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
6. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
7. Overhead Costs, Separate Line Items: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
8. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
9. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five <Insert number> percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
10. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the 10th of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
 - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- G. Transmittal: Submit signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.

1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
 2. Schedule of values.
 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
 5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
 6. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
 7. Schedule of unit prices.
 8. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 9. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 10. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 11. Copies of building permits.
 12. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 13. Initial progress report.
 14. Report of preconstruction conference.
 15. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
 16. Performance and payment bonds.
 17. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
 3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 5. AIA Document G706.
 6. AIA Document G706A.
 7. AIA Document G707.
 8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
 11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
 12. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. RFIs.
 - 4. Digital project management procedures.
 - 5. Web-based Project management software package.
 - 6. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
 - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.

2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, in web-based Project software directory, and in prominent location inbuilt facility. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:

- a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
- a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switchboard, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
- a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
- C. Coordination Drawing Process: Prepare coordination drawings in the following manner:
1. Schedule submittal and review of Fire Sprinkler, Plumbing, HVAC, and Electrical Shop Drawings to make required changes prior to preparation of coordination drawings.
 2. Commence routing of coordination drawing files with HVAC Installer, who will provide drawing plan files denoting approved ductwork. HVAC Installer will locate ductwork and piping on a single layer, using orange color. Forward drawings to Plumbing Installer.
 3. Plumbing Installer will locate plumbing and equipment on a single layer, using blue color.
 4. Fire Sprinkler Installer will locate piping and equipment, using red color. Fire Sprinkler Installer shall forward drawing files to Electrical Installer.
 5. Electrical Installer will indicate service and feeder conduit runs and equipment in green color. Electrical Installer shall forward drawing files to Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer.
 6. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer will indicate cable trays and cabling runs and equipment in purple color. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer shall forward completed drawing files to Contractor.
 7. Contractor shall perform the final coordination review. As each coordination drawing is completed, Contractor will meet with Architect to review and resolve conflicts on the coordination drawings.
- D. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:

1. File Preparation Format:
 - a. Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using format same as file preparation format.
3. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
 - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in AutoDESK Revit 2020
 - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106.

1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
 1. Project name.
 2. Owner name.
 3. Owner's Project number.
 4. Name of Architect.
 5. Architect's Project number.
 6. Date.
 7. Name of Contractor.
 8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 9. RFI subject.
 10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 14. Contractor's signature.
 15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

- a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log. Use software log that is part of web-based Project management software.
1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 5. RFI description.
 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 7. Date Architect's response was received.
 8. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.
 2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
 3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in AutoDESK Revit 2020
 4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106 Digital Data Licensing Agreement.
 - a. Subcontractors and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106.
 5. .
- B. Web-Based Project Management Software Package: Provide, administer, and use web-based Project management software package for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
1. Web-based Project management software includes, at a minimum, the following features:
 - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
 - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
 - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
 - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
 - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
 - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
 - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
 - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
 - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
 - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
 - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
 - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
 - m. .

2. Provide up to seven Project management software user licenses for use of Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants. Provide eight hours of software training at Architect's office for web-based Project software users.
 3. At completion of Project, provide digital archive in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.
- C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of seven days prior to meeting.
 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.

- j. Compatibility requirements.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- C. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
 - d. Submittal of written warranties.
 - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - f. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - g. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - h. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - j. Submittal procedures.

- k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - l. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals.
 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Status of sustainable design documentation.
 - 5) Deliveries.
 - 6) Off-site fabrication.
 - 7) Access.
 - 8) Site use.
 - 9) Progress cleaning.
 - 10) Quality and work standards.
 - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 12) Field observations.
 - 13) Status of RFIs.
 - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
 - 15) Pending changes.
 - 16) Status of Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.

- a. **Schedule Updating:** Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- E. **Coordination Meetings:** Conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. **Attendees:** In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. **Agenda:** Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. **Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule:** Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. **Schedule Updating:** Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. **Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:**
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site use.
 - 8) Work hours.
 - 9) Hazards and risks.
 - 10) Progress cleaning.
 - 11) Quality and work standards.
 - 12) Status of RFIs.
 - 13) Proposal Requests.
 - 14) Change Orders.
 - 15) Pending changes.
 3. **Reporting:** Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Startup construction schedule.
 - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 4. Daily construction reports.
 - 5. Material location reports.
 - 6. Site condition reports.
 - 7. Unusual event reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for schedule of tests and inspections.
 - 2. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.

- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
 - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
 - 2. PDF file.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
 - 1. Submittal of cost-loaded startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
 - 1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.
- E. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.

4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.
- F. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- H. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- I. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- J. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- K. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 2. Temporary Facilities: Indicate start and completion dates for the following as applicable:

- a. Securing of approvals and permits required for performance of the Work.
 - b. Temporary facilities.
 - c. Construction of mock-ups, prototypes and samples.
 - d. Owner interfaces and furnishing of items.
 - e. Interfaces with Separate Contracts.
 - f. Regulatory agency approvals.
 - g. Punch list.
3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
 4. Commissioning Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for commissioning.
 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
 4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 6. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - l. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 - m. Commissioning.

7. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
 - f. Substantial Completion.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion.
- F. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- G. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
 1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- H. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- I. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is [14] <Insert number> or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- J. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect[, **Construction Manager,**] Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.

2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

1.8 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
 1. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in [10] <Insert number> percent increments within time bar.

1.9 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 4. Equipment at Project site.
 5. Material deliveries.
 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 7. Testing and inspection.
 8. Accidents.
 9. Meetings and significant decisions.
 10. Unusual events.
 11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 13. Emergency procedures.
 14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 15. Change Orders received and implemented.
 16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 17. Services connected and disconnected.
 18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 19. Partial completions and occupancies.
 20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for

Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

- C. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
 - 1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for testing and inspection allowances.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.

1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- E. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- G. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- H. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- I. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect[**or Construction Manager**].

1.4 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the

conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.

- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Mockup Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
 - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.

8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
 2. .
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or

defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. **Fabricator Qualifications:** A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. **Specialists:** Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. **Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications:** An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. **Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. **Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. **Preconstruction Testing:** Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following Contractor's responsibilities, including the following:

1. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
2. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
3. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
4. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
5. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, do not reuse products on Project.
6. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

1.11 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances specified in Section 012100 "Allowances," as authorized by Change Orders.
 3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor[, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order].
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 3. Notify testing agencies at least [24] hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
 - 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 - 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
 - 1. Access to the Work.
 - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
 - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
 - 1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
 - 2. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for responsibilities for temporary facilities and controls for projects utilizing multiple contracts.
 - 3. Section 012100 "Allowances" for allowance for metered use of temporary utilities.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.

- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold. Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 - 1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and requirements for replacing water-damaged Work.
 - 2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
 - 3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- F. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:
 - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
 - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 - 4. Waste-handling procedures.
 - 5. Other dust-control measures.
- G. Noise and Vibration Control Plan: Identify construction activities that may impact the occupancy and use of existing spaces within the building or adjacent existing buildings, whether occupied by others, or occupied by the Owner. Include the following:
 - 1. Location of construction devices on the site.
 - 2. Show compliance with the use and maintenance of quieted construction devices for the duration of the Project.
 - 3. Indicate activities that may disturb building occupants and that are planned to be performed during non-standard working hours as coordinated with the Owner.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum **2-inch (50-mm)**, **0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-)** thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum **6 feet (1.8 m)** high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum **2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-)** OD line posts and **2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-)** OD corner and pull posts, with **1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-)** OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete or galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.
- B. Fencing Windscreen Privacy Screen: Polyester fabric scrim with grommets for attachment to chain-link fence, sized to height of fence, in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, **10-mil (0.25-mm)** minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less in accordance with ASTM E84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and **4-foot- (1.2-m-)** square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
 - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of **68 to 72 deg F (20 to 22 deg C)**.
 - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of **20 fc (215 lx)** at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.

1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 2. Heating, Cooling, and Dehumidifying Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of [8] at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction[.] and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- C. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Use of Permanent Toilets: Use of Owner's existing or new toilet facilities is not permitted.
- E. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
 - 1. Install electric power service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install WiFi cell phone access equipment and one land-based telephone line(s) for each field office.
 - 1. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
 - a. Police and fire departments.
 - b. Ambulance service.
 - c. Contractor's home office.
 - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
 - e. Architect's office.
 - f. .
 - g. Engineers' offices.
 - h. Owner's office.
 - i. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- I. Electronic Communication Service: Provide secure WiFi wireless connection to internet with provisions for access by Architect and Owner.

- J. Project Computer: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. Equip computer with not less than the following:
1. Processor: Intel Core i5 or i7.
 2. Memory: 32 gigabyte.
 3. Disk Storage: 1 -terabyte hard-disk drive and combination DVD-RW/CD-RW drive.
 4. Display: 24-inch (610-mm) LCD monitor with 256-Mb dedicated video RAM.
 5. Full-size keyboard and mouse.
 6. Network Connectivity: 10/100BaseT Ethernet.
 7. Operating System: Microsoft Windows 10 Professional.
 8. Productivity Software:
 - a. Microsoft Office Professional, 2013 or higher, including Word, Excel, and Outlook.
 - b. Adobe Reader DC.
 - c. WinZip 10.0 or higher.
 9. Printer: "All-in-one" unit equipped with printer server, combining color printing, photocopying, scanning, and faxing, or separate units for each of these three functions.
 10. Internet Service: Broadband modem, router, and ISP, equipped with hardware firewall, providing minimum 10.0 -Mbps upload and 15 -Mbps download speeds at each computer.
 11. Internet Security: Integrated software, providing software firewall, virus, spyware, phishing, and spam protection in a combined application.
 12. Backup: External hard drive, minimum 2 terrabytes, with automated backup software providing daily backups.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 2. Utilize designated area within existing building for temporary field offices.
 3. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
 4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course in accordance with Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving."
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain, including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
 3. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- D. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- E. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- F. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."
- G. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION
- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."

- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing."
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
 - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- J. Temporary Egress: Provide temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide signage directing occupants to temporary egress.
- K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
 - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- L. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.

2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
 1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.

- b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
- c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 015723 - TEMPORARY STORM WATER POLLUTION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Temporary stormwater pollution controls.

1.3 STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN

- A. The Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) is part of the Contract Documents and is bound into this Project Manual.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, and earthwork subcontractor.
 - 2. Review requirements of the SWPPP, including permitting process, worker training, and inspection and maintenance requirements.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPP): Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit completed SWPPP.
- B. EPA authorization under the EPA's "2017 Construction General Permit (CGP)."
- C. Stormwater Pollution Prevention (SWPP) Training Log: For each individual performing Work under the SWPPP.
- D. Inspection reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) Coordinator: Experienced individual or firm with a record of successful water pollution control management coordination of projects with similar requirements.
 - 1. SWPPP Coordinator shall complete and finalize the SWPPP form.
 - 2. SWPPP Coordinator shall be responsible for inspections and maintaining of all requirements of the SWPPP.
- B. Installers: Trained as indicated in the SWPPP.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY STORMWATER POLLUTION CONTROLS

- A. Provide temporary stormwater pollution controls as required by the SWPPP.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with all best management practices, general requirements, performance requirements, reporting requirements, and all other requirements included in the SWPPP.
- B. Locate stormwater pollution controls in accordance with the SWPPP.
- C. Conduct construction as required to comply with the SWPPP and that minimize possible contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Inspect, repair, and maintain SWPPP controls during construction.
 - a. Inspect all SWPPP controls not less than every seven days, and after each occurrence of a storm event, as outlined in the SWPPP.
- D. Remove SWPPP controls at completion of construction and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during construction.

END OF SECTION 015723

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
 - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 3. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 4. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
 - 5. Section 01770 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model

number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.

1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
1. Resolution of Compatibility Disputes between Multiple Contractors:
 - a. Contractors are responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - b. If a dispute arises between the multiple contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.

1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
 - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
 - b. Model and serial number.
 - c. Capacity.
 - d. Speed.
 - e. Ratings.
3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
 1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
 2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.

5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 1. **Manufacturer's Warranty:** Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 2. **Special Warranty:** Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
- B. **Special Warranties:** Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 1. **Manufacturer's Standard Form:** Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 2. **Specified Form:** When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. **Submittal Time:** Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. **General Product Requirements:** Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 2. **Standard Products:** If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.

4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
 - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
 - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
 - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
 - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.
- E. Sustainable Product Selection: Where Specifications require product to meet sustainable product characteristics, select products complying with indicated requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 01 sustainability requirements Section and individual Specification Sections.
 1. Select products for which sustainable design documentation submittals are available from manufacturer.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following

conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:

1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 5. Samples, if requested.
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation, as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
1. Form of Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
 2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.
- D. Submittal Requirements, Single-Step Process: When acceptable to Architect, incorporate specified submittal requirements of individual Specification Section in combined submittal for comparable products. Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product and of individual submittal requirements will also satisfy other submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Progress cleaning.
 - 6. Starting and adjusting.
 - 7. Protection of installed construction.
 - 8. Correction of the Work.

- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for coordination of, and limits on use of Project site.
 - 2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
 - 4. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.

- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Prior to establishing layout of new perimeter and structural column grid(s), review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.

- b. Professional surveyor responsible for performing Project surveying and layout.
2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.
- C. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor, certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: Refer to Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- C. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Fire separation assemblies.
 - c. Air or smoke barriers.
 - d. Fire-suppression systems.
 - e. Plumbing piping systems.
 - f. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - g. Control systems.

- h. Communication systems.
 - i. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - j. Conveying systems.
 - k. Electrical wiring systems.
 - l. Operating systems of special construction.
 - m. .
3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
- a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
 - e. Equipment supports.
 - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 - h. .
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
 - 1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.

- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before

fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
 - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.

- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
 - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
 - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
 - 1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
 - 2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of **96 inches (2440 mm)** in occupied spaces and **90 inches (2300 mm)** in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
 - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching in accordance with requirements in Section 011000 "Summary."
- F. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- G. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.

- a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, corner to corner of wall and edge to edge of ceiling. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- H. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- D. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- E. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- F. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
 - 4. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

1.7 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's Owner's signature for receipt of submittals.
 - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
 - 6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
 - 7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

1.8 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
5. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection

or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.9 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first, listed by room or space number.
2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. MS Excel Electronic File: Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file. or
 - b. Web-Based Project Software Upload: Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).

1.10 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.

1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.

- i. Vacuum and mop concrete.
 - j. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - k. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - l. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - p. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - q. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - r. Clean strainers.
 - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 017300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for verification and compilation of data into operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect or by uploading to web-based project software site. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 1. Title page.
 2. Table of contents.
 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 2. Name and address of Project.
 3. Name and address of Owner.
 4. Date of submittal.

5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

1.7 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
 2. Emergency instructions.
 3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
 2. Flood.
 3. Gas leak.
 4. Water leak.
 5. Power failure.
 6. Water outage.
 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 8. Chemical release or spill.

- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Instructions on stopping.
 - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

1.8 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 - 3. Operating standards.
 - 4. Operating procedures.
 - 5. Operating logs.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams.
 - 7. Control diagrams.
 - 8. Piped system diagrams.
 - 9. Precautions against improper use.
 - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
 - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 - 4. Equipment function.
 - 5. Operating characteristics.
 - 6. Limiting conditions.
 - 7. Performance curves.
 - 8. Engineering data and tests.

9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Startup procedures.
 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 5. Instructions on stopping.
 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format,

identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

- a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

1.10 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Product name and model number.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 - 4. Material and chemical composition.
 - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
 - 1. Inspection procedures.
 - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
 - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set(s) of file prints.
 - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned Record Prints and three set(s) of file prints.
 - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.

- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
 - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into Project Record Documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
 - 1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as for the original Contract Drawings.
 - 2. Format: DWG, Version Revit 2020, operating system.
 - 3. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 - 4. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 - 5. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
 - 6. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
 - a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
 - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- B. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
 - 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 - 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 - 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 - 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
 - 1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file.
 - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
 - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and address of videographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.

- d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Date of video recording.
2. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
 3. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
 4. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Videographer Qualifications: A professional videographer who is experienced photographing demonstration and training events similar to those required.
- D. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 3. Review required content of instruction.
 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.7 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
 - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.
 - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - d. Product maintenance manuals.
 - e. Project Record Documents.
 - f. Identification systems.
 - g. Warranties and bonds.
 - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
 - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
 - 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.

- c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
- a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
- a. Diagnostic instructions.
 - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
 - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
 - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
 - b. Repair instructions.
 - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

1.8 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.9 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
 - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
 - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of an oral performance-based test.
- F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

1.10 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
 - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full HD mode.
 - 1. Submit video recordings by uploading to web-based Project software site.
 - 2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to Project Manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
 - 3. File Names: Utilize file names based on name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.

4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the equipment demonstration and training recording that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project Manual table of contents:
 - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
 - b. Business address.
 - c. Business phone number.
 - d. Point of contact.
 - e. Email address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
 - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
 - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
 - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.
- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while or dubbing audio narration off-site after video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.
- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.
- G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 017900

SECTION 032000 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel reinforcement bars.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review the following:
 - a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
 - b. Construction contraction and isolation joints.
 - c. Steel-reinforcement installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
2. Bar supports.

B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:

1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.

1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of Architect.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Owner provided.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
 - 1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60** (Grade 420)

2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60** (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.
 - 1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire, all-plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless steel bar supports.
- C. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than **0.0508 inch** (1.2908 mm) in diameter.
 - 1. Finish: Plain

2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
 - 2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.
 - 1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
 - 2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than **1 inch (25 mm)**, not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.
- D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)**.
- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars to be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or **24 inches (610 mm)**, whichever is greater.
 - 2. Stagger splices in accordance with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)**.
 - 3. Mechanical Splice Couplers: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 4. Weld reinforcing bars in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated on Drawings.

3.3 JOINTS

- A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
 - 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
- B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with **ACI 117** (ACI 117M).

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
 - 1. Steel-reinforcement placement.

END OF SECTION 032000

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.

- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor's superintendent.
- b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
- c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
- d. Concrete Subcontractor.
- e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.

2. Review the following:

- a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
- b. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
- c. Semirigid joint fillers.
- d. Vapor-retarder installation.
- e. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
- f. Cold and hot weather concreting procedures.
- g. Concrete finishes and finishing.
- h. Curing procedures.

- i. Forms and form-removal limitations.
- j. Shoring and reshoring procedures.
- k. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness.
- l. Floor and slab flatness and levelness measurements.
- m. Concrete repair procedures.
- n. Concrete protection.
- o. Initial curing and field curing of field test cylinders (ASTM C31/C31M.)
- p. Protection of field cured field test cylinders.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following.

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Aggregates.
4. Admixtures:
 - a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
5. Vapor retarders.
6. Floor and slab treatments.
7. Liquid floor treatments.
8. Curing materials.
 - a. Include documentation from color pigment manufacturer, indicating that proposed methods of curing are recommended by color pigment manufacturer.
9. Joint fillers.
10. Repair materials.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
3. Durability exposure class.
4. Maximum w/cm.
5. Calculated equilibrium unit weight, for lightweight concrete.
6. Slump limit.
7. Air content.
8. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
9. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site if permitted.
10. Intended placement method.
11. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
 - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
- D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:
 1. Concrete Class designation.
 2. Location within Project.
 3. Exposure Class designation.
 4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
 5. Final finish for floors.
 6. Curing process.
 7. Floor treatment if any.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For the following:
 1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
 2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
 3. Testing agency: Owner provided.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 1. Cementitious materials.
 2. Admixtures.
 3. Curing compounds.
 4. Floor and slab treatments.
 5. Bonding agents.
 6. Adhesives.
 7. Vapor retarders.
 8. Semirigid joint filler.
 9. Joint-filler strips.
 10. Repair materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
 1. Portland cement.
 2. Fly ash.
 3. Aggregates.
 4. Admixtures:
- D. Research Reports:
 1. For concrete admixtures in accordance with ICC's Acceptance Criteria AC198.
 2. For sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier, showing compliance with ICC AC380.
- E. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.

- F. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs Project personnel qualified as an ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Flatwork Concrete Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician with experience installing and finishing concrete.,
 - 1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.
- B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner provided.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** and ACI 306.1 and as follows.
 - 1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.
 - 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 - 4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than **35 deg F (1.7 deg C)**, other than reinforcing steel.
 - 5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** and **ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M)**, and as follows:
 - 1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed **95 deg F (35 deg C)**.
 - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I/II, [**gray**] [**white**].
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.

C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 1N coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: See General Structural Notes.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.

E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.

F. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M, including all limits listed in Table 2 and the requirements of paragraph 5.4

2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A; not less than **10 mils (0.25 mm)** thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Stego Industries, LLC](#); Stego Wrap 20-Mil Vapor Barrier or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Fortifiber Building Systems Group](#).
 - b. [Raven Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Reef Industries, Inc.](#)
 - d. [W.R. Meadows, Inc.](#)

2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Euclid Chemical Company \(The\); an RPM company](#).
 - b. [Laticrete International, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Sika Corporation](#).
 - d. [SpecChem, LLC](#).
 - e. [W.R. Meadows, Inc.](#)
- B. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

2.6 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/8 inch (3 mm)** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.

2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (29 MPa) at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, and concrete with a w/cm below 0.50.
- D. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES – See General Structural Notes

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and ASTM C1116/C1116M, and furnish batch ticket information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:
1. Daily access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
 4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
 3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
 2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
 3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than **6 inches (150 mm)**, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
 4. Lap joints **6 inches (150 mm)** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
 5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
 6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
 7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
 - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by **6 inches (150 mm)** on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

- B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair bituminous vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
 - 1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
 - 2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
 - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete.
 - 4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
 - 5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 - 6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 - 7. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 8. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**. Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-)** wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** or more than **1 inch (25 mm)** below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints:

1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

F. Dowel Plates: Install dowel plates at joints where indicated on Drawings.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
 1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**.
 - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
 - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least **6 inches (150 mm)** into preceding layer.
 - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.

- d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
 8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.
 - a. Patch voids larger than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide or **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep.
 - b. Remove projections larger than **1 inch (25 mm)**.
 - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
 - d. Surface Tolerance: **ACI 117 (ACI 117M)** Class D.
 - e. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
2. **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
 - a. Patch voids larger than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** wide or **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep.
 - b. Remove projections larger than **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
 - c. Patch tie holes.
 - d. Surface Tolerance: **ACI 117 (ACI 117M)** Class B.
 - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
3. **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** Surface Finish SF-3.0:
 - a. Patch voids larger than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** wide or **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep.
 - b. Remove projections larger than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
 - c. Patch tie holes.
 - d. Surface Tolerance: **ACI 117 (ACI 117M)** Class A.

- e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- B. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to as cast surface finishes where indicated on Drawings:
1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish:
 - a. Perform no later than one day after form removal.
 - b. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture.
 - c. If sufficient cement paste cannot be drawn from the concrete by the rubbing process, use a grout made from the same cementitious materials used in the in-place concrete.
 - d. Maintain required patterns or variances as shown on Drawings or to match design reference sample.
 2. Grout-Cleaned Rubbed Finish:
 - a. Clean concrete surfaces after contiguous surfaces are completed and accessible.
 - b. Do not clean concrete surfaces as Work progresses.
 - c. Mix 1 part portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand, complying with ASTM C144 or ASTM C404, by volume, with sufficient water to produce a mixture with the consistency of thick paint. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces.
 - d. Wet concrete surfaces.
 - e. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap, and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
 - f. Maintain required patterns or variances as shown on Drawings or to match design reference sample.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces:
1. At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a color and texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
 2. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Trowel Finish:
1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
 2. Continue troweling passes and restraighen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.

3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
7. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, in accordance with **ASTM E1155 (ASTM E1155M)**, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:

a. Slabs on Ground:

- 1) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, **10-ft.- (3.05-m-)** long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.

C. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route.

1. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

D. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases **6 inches (150 mm)** high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction beyond the

maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.

3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4500 psi (31 MPa) <Insert value> at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
 - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
 - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3.10 CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
 1. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
 2. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M) for hot-weather protection during curing.
 3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h), calculated in accordance with ACI 305.1, before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M) as follows:
 1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
 2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
 3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
 4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
 - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
 - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
 - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
 - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
 - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.

- 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with **ACI 308.1 (ACI 308.1M)** as follows:

1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
2. Interior Concrete Floors:
 - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
 - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
 - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
 - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
 - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
 - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
 - a) Water.
 - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
 - b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
 - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
 - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
 - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.

- a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
- 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
- a) Water.
 - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:
- 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
 - 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
 - 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to **ACI 117 (ACI 117M)**.

3.12 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s).
 2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least **2 inches (50 mm)** deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** in any dimension to solid concrete.
 - a. Limit cut depth to **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
 - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
 - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
 - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
 - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
 - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
 - 1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
 - a. Correct low and high areas.
 - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of **0.01 inch (0.25 mm)** wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
 - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.

- a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes **1 inch (25 mm)** or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
- a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a **3/4-inch (19-mm)** clearance all around.
 - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
 - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
 - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes **1 inch (25 mm)** or less in diameter with patching mortar.
- a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
 - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
 - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
1. Testing agency to be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.
 2. Testing agency to immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
 3. Testing agency to report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.

- a. Test reports to include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Name of testing agency.
 - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
 - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
 - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
 - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
 - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
 - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
 - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
 - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
 - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
 - 12) Field test results.
 - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
 - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
- C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- D. Inspections:
 1. Headed bolts and studs.
 2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
 6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M to be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 50 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 150 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
 - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:

- a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
- a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete;
- a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
- a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below or 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
- a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two 6-inch (150 mm) by 12-inch (300 mm) cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast, initial cure, and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
- a. Test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - c. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
8. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor to evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
9. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa) if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
11. Additional Tests:

- a. Testing and inspecting agency to make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
 - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
 - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength to be in accordance with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**, Section 1.6.6.3.
12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with **ASTM E1155 (ASTM E1155M)** within 48 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

3.15 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
1. Protect from petroleum stains.
 2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
 3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
 4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
 5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
 6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
 7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
 8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Shear stud connectors, shop and field welded.
3. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Structural-steel materials.
2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
3. Shear stud connectors.
4. Anchor rods.
5. Shop primer.
6. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.

2. Include embedment Drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer fabricator shop-painting applicators.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- D. Product Test Reports: For the following:
 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 2. Shear stud connectors.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
 2. ANSI/AISC 341.
 3. ANSI/AISC 360.

4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
1. Option 1: Connection designs have been completed and connections indicated on the Drawings.
- 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS – See General Structural Notes
- 2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS – See General Structural Notes.
- 2.4 RODS - See General Structural Notes.
- 2.5 PRIMER
- A. Steel Primer:
1. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- 2.6 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT - See General Structural Notes.
- 2.7 FABRICATION
- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
 3. Identify high-strength structural steel in accordance with ASTM A6/A6M and maintain markings until structural-steel framing has been erected.
 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted in accordance with SSPC-SP 1.

- F. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.8 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.
 - 2.

2.9 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
- B. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
 - 1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

2. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear stud connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear stud connector.
 - b. Conduct tests in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear stud connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear stud connectors already tested.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
1. Level and plumb individual members of structure. Slope roof framing members to slopes indicated on Drawings.
 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M[] for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
- C. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 REPAIR

- A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing, and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
 1. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
 2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
 - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
 - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.
 3. Shear Stud Connectors: In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - b. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Framing with engineered wood products.
3. Shear wall panels.
4. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
5. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
6. Wood furring and grounds.
7. Utility shelving.
8. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061063 "Exterior Rough Carpentry."
2. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for sheathing, subflooring, and underlayment.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** size or greater but less than **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** size or greater in least dimension.
- F. Lumber grading agencies, and abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 3. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 4. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 5. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates:

1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

B. Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Engineered wood products.
3. Shear panels.
4. Power-driven fasteners.
5. Post-installed anchors.
6. Metal framing anchors.
7. Sill sealer gasket/termite barrier.

C. Qualification Statements: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ##### A.
- Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- ##### A.
- Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency

certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber:

1. Boards: 19percent.
2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent
3. Timber. 19 percent.

C. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.

1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA U1; Use Category UC2.

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
3. After treatment, redry dimension lumber to 19 percent maximum moisture content.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

D. Application: Treat

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.

4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions by Grade: No. 2 grade.
 1. Application: Interior partitions not indicated as load bearing.
 2. Species:
 - a. Doug Fir Larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- B. Load-Bearing Partitions by Grade: No. 2 grade.
 1. Application: Exterior walls and interior load-bearing partitions.
 2. Species:
 - a. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
- C. Ceiling Joists: No. 2 grade.
 1. Species:
 - a. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- D. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing by Grade: No. 2 grade.
 1. Species:
 - a. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.

2.4 TIMBER FRAMING

- A. Comply with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
 1. Species and Grade:
 - a. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch No. 1 grade;, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 20 percent.

2.5 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of engineered wood product from single source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D2559. See General Structural Notes.

C. Moisture Protection:

1. For western species (Douglas fir/hemlock), factory end and edge seal laminated veneer lumber with opaque moisture barrier.
2. For southern and eastern species (southern yellow pine, yellow poplar), factory seal laminated veneer lumber on face, edge, and ends.

2.6 SHEAR WALL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. MarinoWARE.
 2. Shear Transfer Systems.
 3. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
- B. Wood-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of wood perimeter framing, tie downs, and Exposure I, Structural I plywood or OSB sheathing.
- C. Steel-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of cold-formed galvanized-steel panel, steel top and bottom plates, and wood studs.
- D. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those of basis-of-design products. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.
 5. Furring.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.
- C. Concealed Boards: 15 [19] percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.8 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1,, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **3/4-inch (19-mm)** nominal thickness.

2.9 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 ICC-ES AC58 ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

2.10 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
 - 2. MiTek Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
 - 4. Tamlyn.
- B. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those of basis-of-design products. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, **G60 (Z180)** coating designation.

1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); **G185 (Z550)** coating designation; and not less than **0.036 inch (0.9 mm)** thick.
 1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:
 1. Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than **0.025 inch (0.6 mm)**.
- C. Adhesives for Gluing Furring to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate [**furring,**]nailers, blocking, [**grounds,**]and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- H. Install sill sealer gasket/termite barrier in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.
- I. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c.
- K. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness.
 - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)** and to solidly fill space below partitions.
 - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than **20 feet (6 m)** o.c.
- L. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- M. Comply with AWPAC M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- N. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- O. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

P. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for [**screeding or**] attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
 1. For exterior walls, provide **2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-)** size wood studs spaced **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For interior partitions and walls, provide **2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-)** **2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-)** size wood studs spaced **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** high, using members of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs, except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
 1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than **4-inch nominal (89-mm actual)** depth for openings **48 inches (1200 mm)** and less in width, **6-inch nominal (140-mm actual)** depth for openings **48 to 72 inches (1200 to 1800 mm)** in width, **8-inch nominal (184-mm actual)** depth for openings **72 to 120 inches (1800 to**

3000 mm) in width, and not less than 10-inch nominal (235-mm actual) depth for openings 10 to 12 feet (3 to 3.6 m) in width.

2. For load-bearing walls, provide Headers and jamb studs as indicated on the drawings.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
 1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate, and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal- (19-by-184-mm actual-) size or 2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-) size stringers spaced 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and toe nail or use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
 1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches (50 mm) deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
 2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches (50 mm) deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide 1-by-6-inch nominal- (19-by-140-mm actual-) size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
- D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TIMBER FRAMING

- A. Install timber beams with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
- B. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) airspace at sides and ends of wood members.
- C. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
- D. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wall sheathing.
- 2. Roof sheathing.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" or for plywood backing panels.
- 2. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Emissions: Products shall meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.3 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.

2.4 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **15/32 inch (11.9 mm)**.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **15/32 inch (11.9 mm)**.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

- D. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
 - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch (0.835 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
 - 2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C954.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - a.
 - 2. Wall and Roof Sheathing:

- a. Nail to wood framing.
- b. Space panels **1/8 inch (3 mm)** apart at edges and ends.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing and Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage [] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 2. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 3. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 4. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 5. Compatible materials have been used.
 6. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 7. Connections between assemblies (sheathing and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 8. All penetrations have been sealed.
- D. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:
 1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier sheathing assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
 2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air-leakage rate according to ASTM E783 or ASTM E2357.
- E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 061800 - GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural glued-laminated timber.
2. Factory finishing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with structural glued-laminated timber.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
2. For connectors. Include installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of structural glued-laminated timber system and full dimensions of each member.
2. Indicate species and laminating combination.
3. Include large-scale details of connections.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Research/Evaluation Reports: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An AITC- or APA-EWS-licensed firm certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with provisions in AITC 111.
- B. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of structural loads shown on Drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in ANSI 117 or determined according to ASTM D3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

- A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with ANSI A190.1 and ANSI 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that are not exposed in the completed Work.
 - 2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations;.
 - 3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with ANSI A190.1.
- B. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber:
 - 1. Douglas fir-larch that complies with combination symbols indicated.
- C. Appearance Grade: Premium, complying with AITC 110.
 - 1. For Premium and Architectural appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110.

2.3 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment: Where preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber is indicated, comply with AWPA U1, Use Category 3A Category 3B.
 - 1. Use preservative solution without substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
 - 2. Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber or wood used to produce structural glued-laminated timber.
- B. Preservative: One of the following:
 - 1. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.
 - 2. Pentachlorophenol in light petroleum solvent.

3. Copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.
 4. Ammoniacal zinc copper arsenate (ACZA) in a water solution.
 5. Chromated copper arsenate (CCA) in a water solution.
 6. Ammoniacal copper quat Type A (ACQ-C) in a water solution.
 7. Propiconazole tebuconazole imidacloprid (PTI) in a water emulsion.
- C. After dressing members, apply a copper naphthenate field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.
 1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planing and surfacing marks.
- B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
- C. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
- D. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.
- E. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, resistant to mildew and fungus.
 1. Water repellent.
 2. Film-forming two-coat, urethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
 - 1. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide **1/2-inch (13-mm)** clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry; bevel cut ends **3 inches (76 mm)**; and do not embed more than **4 inches (102 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- D. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing.
 - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
 - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
 - 3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
 - 4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
 - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Install timber connectors as indicated.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
 - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by Architect.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
 - 1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
 - 2. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

END OF SECTION 061800

SECTION 064113 - WOOD-VENEER-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood cabinets for transparent finish.
2. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
3. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing architectural cabinets that are not concealed within other construction.
4. Shop finishing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings: For architectural cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and finish specified.

1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABINETS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of architectural cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

2.2 WOOD CABINETS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
- B. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- C. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- D. Wood for Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Species: Red oak.
 - 2. Cut: Plain sliced/plain sawn].
 - 3. Grain Direction: Vertically for doors and fixed panels, horizontally for drawer fronts.
 - 4. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Book match.
- E. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
 - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.

2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than **3 inches (75 mm)** wide.
 - 2. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 - 2. Particleboard (Medium Density): ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 - 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
 - 4. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.
 - 5. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Accuride International.
 - b. Blum, Julius & Co., Inc.
 - c. CompX International, Inc.
 - d. Grass America Inc.
 - e. Hardware Resources.
 - f. Hettich America L.P.
 - g. Knape & Vogt Manufacturing Company.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, **5 inches (127 mm)** long, **2-1/2 inches (63.5 mm)** deep, and **5/16 inch (8 mm)** in diameter.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- G. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
1. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount.
- a. Type: Full extension.
 - b. Material: Zinc-plated ball bearing slides.
 - c. Motion Feature: Soft close dampener Self-closing mechanism.
- H. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/ BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- I. Grommets for Cable Passage: **2-inch (51-mm)** OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
1. Color: Black.
- J. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
1. Satin Stainless Steel: ANSI/BHMA 630.
- K. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

2.7 SHOP FINISHING

- A. General: Finish architectural cabinets at manufacturer's shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural cabinets, as applicable to each unit of work.
 - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of cabinets.
- C. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom Same as item to be finished.
 - 2. Finish: System - 5, conversion varnish.
 - 3. Staining: Match approved sample for color.
 - 4. Sheen: Satin, 31-45 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with cabinet surface.
 - 1. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)** using concealed shims.
 - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
 - 4. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.
- E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.

END OF SECTION 064113

SECTION 071113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for bituminous vapor retarders under slabs-on-grade.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. ChemMasters, Inc.
 - 2. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
 - 3. Henry Company.
 - 4. Mar-flex Waterproofing & Building Products.
 - 5. W.R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D1227, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D1227, Type II, Class 1.
- D. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D1227, Type III, Class 1.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- C. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D1668/D1668M, Type I.
- D. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
- E. Protection Course: ASTM D6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.
 - 1. Thickness: Nominal **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
 - 2. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer for protection course type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, maximum surface moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for dampproofing application.
- B. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- C. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any.
- D. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
 - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** over outside face of footing.
 - 1. Extend dampproofing **12 inches (300 mm)** onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
 - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where indicated as "reinforced," by embedding an **8-inch- (200-mm-)** wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.

- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
 - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
 - 2. Lap dampproofing at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

3.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than **1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m)** for first coat and **1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m)** for second coat or one trowel coat at not less than **4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m)**.
- B. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than **1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m)**.
- C. Interior Face of Exterior Concrete Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply one brush or spray coat at not less than **1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m)**.

3.5 PROTECTION COURSE INSTALLATION

- A. Install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
 - 1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
 - 2. Install protection course [**on same day**] [**within 24 hours**] of dampproofing installation (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation drainage panels from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where panels are subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- B. Correct dampproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, and reapply dampproofing.

END OF SECTION 071113

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
- 2. Glass-fiber blanket.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for foam-plastic board sheathing installed directly over wood or steel framing.
- 2. Section 075423 "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
- 3. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.

2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards." Roman numeral designators in ASTM C 578 are assigned in a fixed random sequence, and their numeric order does not reflect increasing strength or other characteristics.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type VI: ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [DiversiFoam Products.](#)
 - b. [Dow Chemical Company \(The\).](#)
 - c. [Owens Corning.](#)
 - d. [Soprema, Inc.](#)
 2. Perm Rating: 1.1
 3. Density: 1.8 (6.3 ng/Pa-s-m²)
 4. Minimum R-value: 3.8

2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [CertainTeed Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.](#)
 - c. [Owens Corning.](#)
 2. Minimum R-value: 13, cavity exterior walls
 3. Minimum STC rating as part of assembly: 50, interior walls

2.3 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [AGM Industries, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Gemco.](#)
 2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, **0.030 inch (0.762 mm)** thick by **2 inches (50 mm)** square.
 3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; **0.105 inch (2.67 mm)** in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- B. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from **0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-)** thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** square or in diameter.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [AGM Industries, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Gemco.](#)
- C. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of **2 inches (50 mm)** between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Gemco.](#)
- D. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements,:
 - a. [AGM Industries, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Gemco.](#)

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.

2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.
1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
- C. Asphalt Coating for Cellular-Glass Block Insulation: Cutback asphalt or asphalt emulsion of type recommended by manufacturer of cellular-glass block insulation.
- D. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to

- insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.
 3. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
 4. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 3. Maintain **3-inch (76-mm)** clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 4. Attics: Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed **96 inches (2438 mm)**, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
 6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
 - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
 7. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.

- a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction.
 - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
- 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072600 - VAPOR RETARDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Polyethylene vapor retarders.
- 2. Reinforced-polyethylene vapor retarders.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for under-slab vapor retarders.
- 2. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for vapor retarders integral with insulation products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D4397, 10-mil- (0.25-mm-) thick sheet, with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (5.7 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

2.2 REINFORCED-POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Sheet with outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 20 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (5.7 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ISI Building Products.
 - b. Raven Industries, Inc.
 - c. Reef Industries, Inc.
 - d. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- B. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and has demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS ON FRAMING

- A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings.
- B. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives, vapor retarder fasteners, or other anchorage system as recommended by manufacturer. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- C. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two studs and sealing with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
- D. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.
- E. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect vapor retarders from damage until concealed by permanent construction.

END OF SECTION 072600

BLANK PAGE

**SECTION 072727- SELF ADHEREING WATER RESISTIVE AIR
BARRIER PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, Instructions to Bidders and Division One General Requirements shall be read in conjunction with and govern this section.
- B. This Specification shall be read as a whole by all parties concerned. Each Section may contain more or less than the complete Work of any trade. The Contractor is solely responsible to make clear to the Subcontractors the extent of their Work.
- C. This Section is provide as a method for envelope enclosure not covered by the insulated metal panel and sub-panel system.

1.02 DESCRIPTION

- A. Supply labor, materials and equipment to complete the Work as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein to bridge and seal the following air leakage pathways and gaps:
 - 1. Connections of the walls to the roof air barrier.
 - 2. Connections of the walls to the foundations.
 - 3. Seismic and expansion joints.
 - 4. Openings and penetrations of window and door frames, store front, curtain wall.
 - 5. Piping, conduit, duct and similar penetrations.
 - 6. Masonry ties, screws, bolts and similar penetrations.
 - 7. All other air leakage pathways in the building envelope.
- B. Materials and installation methods of the primary vapor permeable air barrier membrane system and accessories.
- C. Materials and installation methods of through-wall flashing membranes.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide an air barrier membrane system constructed to perform as a continuous air barrier, and as a liquid water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior any incidental condensation or water penetration. Membrane system shall accommodate movements of building materials by providing expansion and control joints as required, with accessory air sealant materials at such locations, changes in substrate, perimeter conditions and penetrations.

1.04 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Concrete	Section 033000	Cast-In-Place Concrete
B. Sheathing	Section 061600	Sheathing
C. Insulation:	Section 072100	Thermal Insulation
D. Roofing:	Section 075423	Thermoplastic-polyolefin (TPO) roofing
E. Wall Panels	Section 074213.13	Formed Metal Wall Panels
F. Flashing	Section 076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
G. Sealants:	Section 079200	Joint Sealants
H. Door & Frames:	Section 084113	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts

1.05 REFERENCES

- A. The following standards are applicable to this section:
 - 1. ASTM E2357: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
 - 2. ASTM E2178: Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials.
 - 3. ASTM E283: Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
 - 4. ASTM E96: Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
 - 5. ASTM C920: Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
 - 6. ASTM C1193: Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
 - 7. ASTM E84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building

Materials.

8. NFPA: Class A 0 -25 Flame Spread Index 0 -450 Smoke Developed Index.
9. ICC-ES AC-38: Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Barriers.
10. ICC-ES AC188: Acceptance Criteria for Roof Underlayments.
11. ICC-ES AC48: Acceptance Criteria for Roof Underlayment for use in Severe Climates.
12. AAMA 2400: Standard Practice for Installation of Windows with a Mounting Flange in Stud Frame Construction.
13. ASTM E 2112: Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights.
14. AAMA 711-05: Specification for Self Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products.

B. AATCC – American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists.

1. Test Method 127 Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure Test.

C. TAPPI

1. Test Method T-410; Grams of Paper and Paperboard (Weight per Unit Area).
2. Test Method T-460; Air Resistance (Gurley Hill Method).

1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit documentation from an approved independent testing laboratory certifying compliance with a) the air leakage rates of the air barrier membrane assembly, including primary membrane, primer and sealants have been tested to meet ASTM E2357, b) ICC-AC 38, c) Peel adhesion to unprimed plywood and cyclic and elongation per ICC-AC 48, d) Class A flame spread index and smoke development per ASTM E-84.
- B. Submit documentation from an approved independent testing laboratory certifying the air leakage and vapor permeance rates of the air barrier membrane, including primary membrane and transition sheets, exceed the requirements of the Massachusetts Energy Code and in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 1. Test report submittals shall include test results of sustained wind loads and gust load air leakage results.
- C. Submit manufacturers' current product data sheets for the air barrier membrane system.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Submit document stating the applicator of the primary air barrier membranes specified in this section is authorized by the manufacturer as suitable for the execution of the Work.
- B. Perform Work in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and this specification.
- C. Maintain one copy of manufacturer's written instructions on site.
- D. Allow access to Work site by the air barrier membrane manufacturer's representatives.
- E. Components used shall be sourced from one manufacturer, including sheet membrane, air barrier sealants, primers, mastics, flashings and adhesives.
- F. Single-Source Responsibility:
 1. Obtain air barrier materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing the product.
 2. Provide products which comply with all federal, state and local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).

1.08 MOCK-UP

- A. Where directed by architect, construct typical exterior wall panel, 6 foot long by 6 foot wide, incorporating substrate, window frame, attachment of insulation and showing air barrier membrane application details.
- B. Allow 48 hours for inspection of mock-up by architect before proceeding with air barrier work. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work.
- C. Test mock-up for air and water infiltration to conform with Section 014000 - Quality Control, in accordance with ASTM E783 and ASTM E1105.

- 1.09 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE
- A. Ensure all contractors responsible for creating a continuous plane of air tightness are present.
- 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING
- A. Refer to current Product MSDS for proper storage and handling.
- B. Deliver materials to the job site in undamaged and original packaging indicating the name of the manufacturer and product.
- C. Store roll materials on end in original packaging. Protect rolls from direct sunlight and weather until ready for use.
- D. Store air barrier membranes, adhesives and primers at temperatures of 40 degrees F and rising.
- E. Keep solvent away from open flame or excessive heat.
- F. Wasted Management and Disposal
1. Separate and recycle waste materials in accordance with Section, and with the Waste Reduction Work Plan
- G. Contractor to verify compliance for Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) limitations of products to comply with all federal, state and local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
- 1.12 CO-ORDINATION
- A. Ensure continuity of the specified membranes throughout the scope of this section.
1. Air barrier membrane to include self-adhered air barrier, transition membranes and sealant at penetrations.
2. Drainage plane to include water resistive barrier and flexible flashings to exterior.
- 1.13 WARRANTY
- A. Provide manufacturer's standard 12-year material warranty for air barrier membrane materials, sealant and flashing membrane.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MATERIALS
- A. Air barrier membrane components and accessories must be obtained as a single-source from the membrane manufacturer to ensure total system compatibility and integrity.
- 2.02 MEMBRANES
- A. Basis-of-Design for primary water resistive air barrier membrane shall be BlueskinVP™ 160 manufactured by Henry; a self-adhering reinforced modified polyolefin tri-laminate sheet air barrier membrane for wall construction, specifically designed to be water resistant and vapor permeable. Patented adhesive backing to be protected with 3 piece release film. Membrane shall have the following physical properties:
1. Air leakage: <0.004 CFM/ft² @ 1.57 lbs/ft² when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 2. Water Vapor Permeance: 29 perms to ASTM E96, Method B.
 3. Tested to ASTM E2357 for Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
 4. Resistance to Water Penetration: Pass ICC-ES AC 38.
 5. Water Penetration Resistance around Nails: Pass when tested to AAMA 711-05 & ASTM D 1970 modified.
 6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84: Flame Spread Rating of 0 and Smoke Development Classification of 105.
 7. Basis Weight: Minimum 160 gm/m², when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.
 8. Tensile Strength: 40 lbF MD and 29 lbF CD per ASTM D828.
 9. Average Dry Breaking Force: 127 lbF MD, and 91 lbF CD per ASTM D 5034.

10. Cyclic and Elongation: Pass at 100 cycles, -29 degrees C (-20 degrees F) per ICC-ES AC 48.
- B. Other manufacturers include, but are not limited to the following, but must be approved by Architect prior to bid:
1. Grace; Perm-A-Barrier.
 2. Tyvek; CommercialWrap D
- B. Self-adhering membrane for window sill pan flashings:
1. Membrane Thickness: 0.040 inches (40 mils).
 2. Low temperature flexibility: -30 degrees F to ASTM D146.
 3. Elongation: 200% minimum to ASTM D412-modified.
 4. Minimum Puncture Resistance 40lbf to ASTM E154.
 5. Lap Peel Strength 10 lbf/in width to ASTM D903 180° bend.
 6. Auxiliary tested component of ASTM E2357 for Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
- C. Self-adhering membrane for all window jambs, headers, door openings, inside and outside corners, and other transitions:
1. Air leakage: <0.004 CFM/ft² @ 1.57 lbs/ft² [<0.02L/s/m² @ 75Pa] when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 2. Water Vapor Permeance: 29 perms to ASTM E96, Method B.
 3. Tested to ASTM E2357 for Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
 4. Resistance to Water Penetration: Pass ICC-ES AC 38.
 5. Water Penetration Resistance around Nails: Pass when tested to AAMA 711-05 & ASTM D 1970 modified.
 6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84: Flame Spread Rating of 0 and Smoke Development Classification of 105.
 7. Basis Weight: Minimum 160 gm/m², when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.
 8. Tensile Strength: 40 lbF MD and 29 lbF CD per ASTM D828.
 9. Average Dry Breaking Force: 127 lbF MD, and 91 lbF CD per ASTM D 5034.
 10. Cyclic and Elongation: Pass at 100 cycles, -29 degrees C (-20 degrees F) per ICC-ES AC 48.
- D. Through-wall flashing membrane (Self-Adhering):
1. Membrane Thickness: 0.0394 inches (40 mils)
 2. Film Thickness: 4.0 mils.
 3. Flow (ASTM D5147): Pass @ 212 degrees F.
 4. Puncture Resistance: 134 lbf to ASTM E 154.
 5. Tensile Strength (film): 5723 psi ASTMD882.
 6. Tear Resistance: 13lbs. MD to ASTMD1004.
 7. Low temperature flexibility: -22 degrees F to CGSB 37-GP-56M.
- 2.03 PRIMERS
- A. Low VOC primer for primary self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane, self-adhering transition membrane and SBS modified bitumen membranes at all temperatures:
1. Colour: Blue.
 2. Weight: 7.68 lbs/gal.
 3. Solids by weight: 40%.
 4. Max. V.O.C. <240 grams/liter.
 5. Drying time (initial set): 30 minutes at 50% RH and 70 degrees F.
- B. Primer for primary self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane, self-adhering transition membrane and SBS modified bitumen membranes at all temperatures:
1. Color: Clear to amber.

2. Solids by weight: 30%.
 3. Maximum VOC 440 g/l.
 4. Drying time (initial set): 10 minutes.
 5. Service Temp: -40 degrees F to 158 degrees F.
- C. Primer for primary self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane, self-adhering transition membrane and SBS modified bitumen membranes at all temperatures:
1. Color: Blue.
 2. Weight: 6 lbs/gal.
 3. Solids by weight: 35%.
 4. Drying time (initial set): 30 minutes.
- 2.04 PENETRATION & TERMINATION SEALANT
- A. Termination Sealant; a moisture cure, medium modulus polymer modified sealing compound having the following physical properties:
1. Compatible with sheet air barrier, roofing and waterproofing membranes and substrate,
 2. Complies with Fed. Spec. TT-S-00230C, Type II, Class A.
 3. Complies with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25.
 4. Elongation: 450 – 550%.
 5. Remains flexible with aging.
 6. Seals construction joints up to 1 inch wide.
 6. Auxiliary tested component of ASTM E2357 for Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the Work of this section. Notify architect in writing of any discrepancies. Commencement of the Work or any parts thereof shall mean acceptance of the prepared substrates.
- B. All surfaces must be sound, dry, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants detrimental to the adhesion of the membranes. Fill voids, gaps and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints full-flush.
- C. Curing compounds or release agents used in concrete construction must be resin based without oil, wax or pigments.
- D. Condition materials to room temperature prior to application to facilitate handling.

3.02 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Surfaces must be sound, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants. Fill spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane.
- B. New concrete should be cured for a minimum of 14 days and must be dry before primer for air barrier membranes are applied.
- C. Ensure all preparatory Work is complete prior to applying primary air barrier membrane.
- D. Mechanical fasteners used to secure sheathing boards or penetrate sheathing boards shall be set flush with sheathing and fastened into solid backing.
- E. Pre-cast and concrete block substrates are required to be primed prior to application of self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane.

3.03 APPLICATION OF SUBSTRATE PRIMER

- A. Required Primer for SBS Modified Self-adhering Membranes.
1. For the application of SBS modified self-adhering window sill pan flashings, through-wall flashings and other applications of SBS modified self-adhering transition membranes, the substrate needs to be conditioned with applicable primer.

2. Apply primer at rate recommended by manufacturer to all areas to receive SBS modified self-adhering sheet membrane as indicated on drawings by roller or spray and allow to dry.
 3. Primed surfaces not covered by self-adhering membrane or self-adhering through-wall flashing membrane during the same working day must be re-primed.
 4. For applications of SBS modified self-adhered membranes installed over the primary self-adhered water resistive air barrier membrane, the surface of the primary self-adhered water resistive air barrier membrane must be primed and allowed to cure prior to the placement of the SBS modified self- adhered membrane.
- B. Primer for Primary Water Resistive Air Barrier Membrane.
1. Clean, dry surfaces of most common construction materials, exterior grade gypsum board, primed steel, aluminum and galvanized metal do not require to be primed to achieve appropriate surface adhesion when surface temperature is above 50 degrees F. If temperatures at application will be below 50 degrees F please contact the manufacturer for requirements.
 2. Where appropriate surface adhesion can not be achieved, prime substrate with specified primer in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal as per Technical Data Sheet.
 3. Pre-cast concrete and concrete block substrates are required to be primed prior to application of self- adhering water resistive air barrier membrane.

3.04 INSTALLTION OF AIR BARRIER SYSTEM

A. INSIDE AND OUTSIDE CORNERS

1. Seal inside and outside corners of sheathing boards with a strip of self-adhering vapor permeable membrane extending a minimum of 3 inches on either side of the corner detail.
 - a. For inside corners, pre-treat the corner with a continuous ½ inch bead of termination sealant.
 - b. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
 - c. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Ensure minimum 2 inches overlap at all side laps and minimum 3 inches overlap at all end laps of membrane.
 - d. Roll all laps and membrane with a counter top roller to ensure seal.

B. TRANSITION AREAS

1. Tie-in to structural beams, columns, floor slabs and intermittent floors, parapet curbs, foundation walls, roofing systems and at the interface of dissimilar materials as indicated in drawings with self-adhering water resistive air barrier transition membrane.
 - a. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
 - b. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Provide minimum 3 inch lap to all substrates.
 - c. Ensure minimum 2 inches overlap at all side laps and minimum 3 inches overlap at all end laps of membrane.
 - d. Roll all laps and membrane with a counter top roller to ensure seal.

C. WINDOWS AND ROUGH OPENINGS

1. Place specified SBS modified self-adhering window sill pan flashing membrane across window sills. Pre-treat inside corners with a bead of termination sealant. Install window sill pan membrane and end dam terminations, seal cuts and terminations with termination sealant.

2. Wrap jamb of rough openings with specified self-adhering water resistive air barrier transition membrane as detailed.
3. Extend specified self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane into rough window openings sufficient to provide a connection to interior vapor retarder.
 - a. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
 - b. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Ensure minimum 2 inches overlap at all side laps and minimum 3 inches overlap at all end laps of membrane.
 - c. Roll all laps and membrane with a counter top roller to ensure seal.

D. THROUGH-WALL FLASHING MEMBRANE

1. Apply through-wall flashing membrane along the base of masonry veneer walls and over shelf angles as detailed.
 - a. Prime surfaces and allow to dry, press membrane firmly into place, over lap minimum 2 inches at all end and side laps. Promptly roll all laps and membrane to ensure the seal.
 - b. Applications shall form a continuous flashing membrane and shall extend up a minimum of 8 inches up the back-up wall.
 - c. Seal the top edge of the membrane where it meets the substrate using termination sealant. Trowel-apply a feathered edge to seal termination to shed water.
 - d. Install through-wall flashing membrane and extend 1/2 inch from outside edge of veneer. Provide "end dam" flashing as detailed.

E. PRIMARY WATER RESISTIVE AIR BARRIER

1. Apply self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane complete and continuous to substrate in a sequential overlapping weatherboard method starting at bottom or base of wall and working up in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions. Stagger all vertical joints.
 - a. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
 - b. Cut to manageable sections, align and position self-adhering membrane to substrate, remove top panel of protective release film and press firmly into place.
 - c. Ensure alignment, hold membrane in place to avoid wrinkles and sequentially remove remaining panels of protective film and press firmly into place.
 - d. Ensure minimum 3 inch overlap at all ends and 2 inch side laps of subsequent membrane applications.
 - c. Pressure roll all membrane surfaces, laps and flashings with a counter top roller or 'J-roller' to ensure appropriate surface adhesion.
 - d. At the end of each days work seal the top edge of the membrane where it meets the substrate with termination sealant. Trowel apply a feathered edge to seal termination and shed water.

3.05 APPLICATION OF TERMINATION SEALANT

- A. Seal membrane terminations, heads of mechanical fasteners, masonry tie fasteners, around penetrations, duct work, electrical and other apparatus extending through the primary water resistive air barrier membrane and around the perimeter edge of membrane terminations at window and door frames with specified termination sealant.
- B. Seal the leading edge of membrane terminations and reverse laps.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Make notification when sections of Work are complete to allow review prior to covering air barrier

system.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Damp substrates must not be inhibited from drying out. Drying time varies depending on temperature and relative humidity. Do not expose the backside of the substrate to moisture or rain.
- B. Cap and protect exposed back-up walls against wet weather conditions during and after application of membrane, including wall openings and construction activity above completed air barrier installations. Protect air barrier membrane from damage and inclement weather during the construction phase.
- C. Water resistive air barrier membrane is not designed for permanent exposure. Good practice calls for covering as soon as possible, not to exceed 90 days.
- D. Regional weather conditions and daytime sunlight temperatures may require the membrane to be protected under the 90 day exposure limit.

END OF SECTION
072727

SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Standing-seam metal roof panels.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 074293 "Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of deck, purlins and rafters during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
 - 9. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10)**.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Metal Panels: **12 inches (305 mm)** long by actual panel width. Include clips, fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.

- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels according to one of the following when tested according to CRRC-1:
1. Three-year, aged Solar Reflectance Index of not less than 64 when calculated according to ASTM E1980.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
 4. .
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than **0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m)** when tested according to ASTM E1680 or ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: **1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa)**.
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E1646 or ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: **2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa)**.

- E. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E2140.
- F. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
 - 1. Uplift Rating: UL 60.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
 - 1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E1514.
 - 2. Aluminum Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E1637.
- B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **PAC-CLAD; Petersen Aluminum Corporation; a Carlisle company;** High Snap-On Standing Seam or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **ATAS International, Inc.**
 - b. **CENTRIA.**
 - c. **Firestone Building Products.**
 - d. **MBCI.**
 - 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50 (Class AZM150)** coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Nominal Thickness: **0.034 inch (0.86 mm).**
 - b. Exterior Finish: [**Three-coat fluoropolymer**].
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

3. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
 - a. Thickness: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)**.
 - b. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - c. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer or Clear anodized.
 - d. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Clips: One-piece fixed to accommodate thermal movement.
 - a. Material: **0.0250-inch- (0.635-mm-)** thick, stainless steel sheet.
5. Panel Coverage: **18 inches (457 mm)**.
6. Panel Height: **1.75 inches (44 mm)**.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of **30 mils (0.76 mm)** thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at **240 deg F (116 deg C)**; ASTM D1970.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus **20 deg F (29 deg C)**; ASTM D1970.
 3. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [ATAS International, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials.](#)
 - c. [Henry Company.](#)
 - d. [Owens Corning.](#)
- B. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.
- C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, **G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized)** coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50 (Class AZM150)** coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets,

fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.

1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch- (25-mm-)** thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of **36 inches (914 mm)** o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels roof fascia and rake trim.
- E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in **10-foot- (3-m-)** long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- F. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, **0.048-inch (1.2-mm)** nominal thickness; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles and with welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of **0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-)** nominal thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.
1. Insulate roof curb with **1-inch- (25-mm-)** thick, rigid insulation.
- G. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
- H. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:

1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- D. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Exposed Anodized Finish:
 - a. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
- B. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than **2 inches (50 mm)**.
 1. Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap over edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than **3 inches (75 mm)**, in shingle fashion to shed water.
- C. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
- D. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
 4. Stainless Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners.
- C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

- E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.
1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
 4. Watertight Installation:
 - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
 - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 - c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum **6-inch (152-mm)** end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 feet (3 m)** with no joints allowed within **24 inches (610 mm)** of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than **36 inches (914 mm)** o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

- I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely **1 inch (25 mm)** away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately **60 inches (1524 mm)** o.c. in between.
 - 1. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- J. Roof Curbs: Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
- K. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines as indicated and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.16

SECTION 074213.13 - FORMED METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal liner panels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 074293 "Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
 - 8. Review of procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
 - B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).
 - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied finishes.
 1. Include Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
 - D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 1. Metal Panels: 12 inches (305 mm) long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
 - B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - C. Field quality-control reports.
 - D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers who are approved by manufacturer.
 - B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.
 - C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than **0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m)** when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: **1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa)**.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: **2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa)**.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): **120 deg F (67 deg C)**, ambient; **180 deg F (100 deg C)**, material surfaces.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

- A. Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.

2.3 METAL LINER PANELS

- A. Provide factory-formed metal liner panels designed for interior side walls and field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for a complete installation.
- B. Metal Liner Panels: Solid panels formed with a flat pan between panel edges; with a flush joint between panels.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pac-Clad; Flush Panel or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - b. CENTRIA.
 - c. Fabral.
 - d. MBCI.
 2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
 - a. Thickness: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)**.
 - b. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - c. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
 - d. Color: Golden Maple.
 3. Panel Coverage: **12 inches (305 mm)**.
 4. Seam Profile: Flush .
 5. Seam Height: 1.0 Inches (25.4 mm).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, **G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized)** coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50 (Class AZM150)** aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch- (25-mm-)** thick, flexible closure

strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 - 2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 - 3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
 - 4. Stainless Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.

2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.

E. Watertight Installation:

1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum **6-inch (152-mm)** end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

F. Metal Liner Panels: Install panels on exterior side of girts, with girts exposed to the interior.

G. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

H. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 feet (3 m)** with no joints allowed within **24 inches (610 mm)** of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- D. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213.13

SECTION 074293 - SOFFIT PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal soffit panels.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 074113.13 "Formed Metal Roof Panels" for lap-seam metal roof panels.
 - 2. Section 074213.13 "Formed Metal Wall Panels" for lap-seam metal wall panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10)**.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

- 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

1. Metal Panels: 12 inches (305 mm) long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including fascia, and soffit as shown on Drawings; approximately four panels wide by full eave width, including attachments and accessories.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
 4. .
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than **0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m)** when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: **1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa)**.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: **2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa)**.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): **120 deg F (67 deg C)**, ambient; **180 deg F (100 deg C)**, material surfaces.

2.2 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. Provide metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Metal Soffit Panels: Match profile and material of metal wall panels.
1. Finish: Match finish and color of metal wall panels.
 2. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, **G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized)** coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50 (Class AZM150)** aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch- (25-mm-)** thick, flexible closure

strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant types recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.

3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
 1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- D. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
2. Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
 1. Soffit Framing: Wire tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 7. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
 - 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
 - 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 - 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
- E. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- F. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
 - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling, and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.
 - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 feet (3 m)** with no joints allowed within **24 inches (610 mm)** of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.

- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074293

SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fiber-cement siding.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
 - 2. Section 072727_ "Self-Adhered Air Barrier" for weather-resistive air barriers.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For fiber-cement siding including related accessories.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, texture, and pattern required.
 - 1. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Sample of siding.
 - 2. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Samples of trim and accessories.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of fiber-cement siding.

- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fiber-cement siding required, from ICC-ES.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of product, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish full lengths of fiber-cement [**siding**] [**and**] [**soffit**] including related accessories, in a quantity equal to 2 percent of amount installed.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including cracking and deforming.
 - b. Deterioration of materials beyond normal weathering.
 - c. .

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. General: ASTM C1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. American Fiber Cement Corporation.
- b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
- c. GAF.
- d. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
- e. Nichiha Architectural Panels.

- B. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **5/16 inch (8 mm)**.
- D. Panel Texture: **48-inch- (1200-mm-)** wide sheets with smooth texture.
- E. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.

1. Provide accessories matching color and texture of adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following fiber-cement decorative accessories as indicated:

1. Corner posts.
2. Door and window casings.
3. Moldings and trim.
4. .

- C. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
 - 1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Siliconized polyester coating.
- D. Fasteners:
 - 1. For fastening to wood, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of **1 inch (25 mm)** into substrate.
 - 2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, or three screw-threads, into substrate.
 - 3. For fastening fiber cement, use hot-dip galvanized fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement siding and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Do not install damaged components.
 - 2. Install fasteners no more than **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c.
- B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074646

SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Vapor retarder.
3. Roof insulation.
4. Cover board.
5. Walkways.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
4. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings and roof edge flashings.
5. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
 1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
 2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
 4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
 5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
 6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
 7. Tie-in with adjoining air barrier.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 1. Roof membrane and flashings, of color required.
 2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.
- D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
 1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

- a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 1. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, vapor retarder, substrate board, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
 - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
 - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746, ASTM D 4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
 - 1. As indicated in the structural drawings
- D. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI): Three-year-aged SRI not less than 64 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
- E. ENERGY STAR Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- F. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- G. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- H. Resistance to xenon-arc weathering (ASTM G 155) must be tested and pass a minimum of 17,640 kJ/m² or 14,000 hours at an irradiance of 0.35 W/m².
- I. Must meet or exceed ASTM D 4434 for linear dimensional change and for heat aging.
- J. Must meet or exceed ASTM D 5635 for dynamic impact resistance.
- K. Must meet or exceed ASTM D 2136 for low temperature flexibility.

2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

- A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D 6878/D 6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, fabric-backed TPO sheet.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - b. Firestone Building Products.
 - c. GAF.
 - d. Flex Membrane International Corp.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.
 - 3. Thickness: 60 mils (1.5 mm), nominal. Reinforced.
 - 4. Exposed Face Color: Gray.

2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.

1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, **55 mils (1.4 mm)** thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately **1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm)** thick; with anchors.
- G. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately **1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick)**, prepunched.
- H. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- I. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.4 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, **6 mils (0.015 mm)** thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of **0.13 perm (0.084 metric perm)**.
 1. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- B. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor Retarder: Polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive, minimum **30-mil (0.76-mm)** total thickness; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**; cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer.

2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roof membrane manufacturer.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. [Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.](#)
 - b. [Firestone Building Products.](#)
 - c. [Flex Membrane International Corp.](#)
 - d. [GAF.](#)
2. Compressive Strength: **20 psi** (138 kPa).
 3. Size: **48 by 96 inches** (1219 by 2438 mm).
 4. Thickness:
 - a. Base Layer: **2.6 inches** (66 mm).
 - b. Upper Layer: **2.6 inches** (66 mm).
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
1. Material: Match roof insulation.
 2. Minimum Thickness: **1/4 inch** (6.35 mm).
 3. Slope:
 - a. Roof Field: **1/4 inch per foot** (1:48) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Saddles and Crickets: **1/2 inch per foot** (1:24) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
1. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
- C. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C 1278/C 1278M fiber-reinforced gypsum board.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.](#)
 - b. [National Gypsum Company.](#)
 - c. [USG Corporation.](#)
 2. Thickness: **1/2 inch** (13 mm).
 3. Surface Finish: Factory primed.

2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately **3/16 inch (5 mm)** thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
 - 1. Size: Approximately **36 by 60 inches (914 by 1524 mm)**.
 - 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours after performing tests.
 - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.
- D. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Coordinate installation and transition of roofing system component serving as an air barrier with air barrier specified under Section 072727 "Self-Adhered Air Barrier."

3.4 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 and 6 inches (50 and 150 mm)**, respectively.
 - 1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of insulation and cover board.
 - 2. Continuously seal side and end laps with adhesive.
- B. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering-sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **3-1/2 and 6 inches (90 and 150 mm)**, respectively.
 - 1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of insulation and cover board.
 - 2. Seal laps by rolling.
- C. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components, so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and roof insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Wood Decking:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten slip sheet to roof deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening slip sheet to wood decks.
 - a. Fasten slip sheet according to requirements in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.

- b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus **24 inches (610 mm)**.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - e. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
 - f. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
2. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to wood decks.
 3. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** from previous layer of insulation.
 - a. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in adjacent rows.
 - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus **24 inches (610 mm)**.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - e. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
 - f. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - g. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction.
 1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
 - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.

3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - a. Set cover board in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- B. Install slip sheet over cover board and beneath roof membrane.

3.7 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel and Owner's testing and inspection agency.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- F. Fabric-Backed Roof Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane.
- G. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- H. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- I. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- J. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.8 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.

- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.9 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

A. Flexible Walkways:

- 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
 - a. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - b. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - c. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
 - d. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - e. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - f. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
- 2. Provide **6-inch (76-mm)** clearance between adjoining pads.
- 3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor to perform tests and to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Perform the following tests:
 - 1. Flood Testing: Flood test each roof area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing roofing and flashing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
 - a. Perform tests before overlying construction is placed.
 - b. Flood to an average depth of **2-1/2 inches (65 mm)** with a minimum depth of **1 inch (25 mm)** and not exceeding a depth of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Maintain **2 inches (50 mm)** of clearance from top of base flashing.
 - c. Flood each area for 24 hours.
 - d. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.

- 1) Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.
 - e. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of initial leaks, if any, and final survey report.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
- D. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.11 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.12 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
 1. Owner: Lifeline Safe Harbor.
 2. Address: 223 West 475 South, Layton, Utah 84041.
 3. Owner Project Number: .
 4. Building Name/Type: New Lifeline Safe Harbor Building.
 5. Address: 223 West 475 South, Layton, Utah 84041.
 6. Area of Work: Roof.
 7. Acceptance Date: _____.
 8. Warranty Period: 5 years.
 9. Expiration Date: _____.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,

- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. lightning.
 - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 115 mph (m/sec);
 - c. fire.
 - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
 2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
 5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
 6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
 7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work

according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION 075423

BLANK PAGE

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
2. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
3. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim " for materials and installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
3. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for manufactured copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, reglets, and counterflashings.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following
 - 1. Underlayment materials.
 - 2. Elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Butyl sealant.
 - 4. Epoxy seam sealer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
 - 3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
 - 4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
 - 5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
 - 6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
 - 7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
 - 8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
 - 9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
 - 10. Include details of special conditions.
 - 11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
 - 12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10)**.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **12 inches (300 mm)** long by actual width.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.
 - 1. Sheet Metal Flashing: **12 inches (300 mm)** long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
 - 2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: **12 inches (300 mm)** long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
 - 3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
 - 4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For copings and roof edge flashing, from an agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction or ICC-ES showing compliance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Special warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical roof edge, including fascia, approximately 10 feet (3.0 m) long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 - 1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
 - 2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.

- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.
 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil (0.013 mm)**.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum **30 mils (0.76 mm)** thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials.](#)
 - b. [Henry Company.](#)
 - c. [Owens Corning.](#)
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.
 3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus **20 deg F (29 deg C)** or lower.
- B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, **3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m)** minimum.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- G. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- H. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Cheney Flashing Company](#).
 - b. [Fry Reglet Corporation](#).
 - c. [National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.](#)
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain reglets from single source from single manufacturer.
 3. Material: Aluminum, **0.024 inch (0.61 mm)** thick or Galvanized steel, **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.

4. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
5. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
6. Accessories:
 - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
 - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
7. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.

- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Seams:
 - 1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- G. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters:
 - 1. Fabricate to cross section required, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required.
 - 2. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long sections.
 - 3. Furnish flat-stock gutter brackets and flat-stock gutter spacers and straps fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by cited sheet metal standard, but with thickness not less than twice the gutter thickness.
 - 4. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, gutter bead reinforcing bars, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
 - 5. Gutter Profile: Style A in accordance with cited sheet metal standard.
 - 6. Expansion Joints: Lap type.
 - 7. Accessories: Continuous, removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen.
 - 8. Gutters with Girth up to **15 Inches (380 mm)**: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
 - b. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated on Drawings, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from [**same material as downspouts and anchors**] **<Insert material>.[Shop fabricate elbows.]**
 - 1. Fabricated Hanger Style: Fig. 1-35H in accordance with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Aluminum: **0.024 inch (0.61 mm)** thick.
 - b. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
- C.

2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long, but not exceeding **12-foot- (3.6-m-)** long sections. Furnish with **6-inch- (150-mm-)** wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and **6-inch- (150-mm-)** wide, exposed cover plate.
 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Aluminum: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** thick.
 - b. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long, but not exceeding **12-foot- (3.6-m-)** long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Coping Profile: Fig. 3-4A in accordance with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 2. Joint Style: Single Lock Standing Seam.
 3. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Aluminum: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** thick.
 - b. Galvanized Steel: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)** thick.
- C. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)** thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
- D. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
- E. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
- G. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless Steel: **0.0156 inch (0.396 mm)** thick.

2.8 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long, but not exceeding **12-foot- (3.6-m-)** long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond each side of

wall openings; and form with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch (0.396 mm) thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

2. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.0188 inch (0.477 mm) thick.

2. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.0250 inch (0.635 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.

2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment:

1. Install self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment; wrinkle free.

2. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

3. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures.

4. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses.

5. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller.

6. Roll laps and edges with roller.

7. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- B. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, directly on substrate before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.
1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
 2. Lapp joints not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
 3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
 5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c.
 6. Space individual cleats not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
 9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Space movement joints at maximum of **10 feet (3 m)** with no joints within **24 inches (600 mm)** of corner or intersection.
 2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
 - 1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** into sealant.
 - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
 - c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between **40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C)**, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
 - d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
 - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below **40 deg F (4 deg C)**.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters:
 - 1. Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or joints sealed with sealant.
 - 2. Provide for thermal expansion.
 - 3. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchor them in position.
 - 4. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
 - 5. Slope to downspouts.
 - 6. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
 - 7. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous eave or apron flashing.
 - 8. Anchor gutter with straps spaced not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** <Insert dimension> apart to roof deck unless otherwise indicated, and loosely lock to front gutter bead.
 - 9. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated on Drawings, but not exceeding, **50 feet (15.2 m)** apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
 - 10. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable for cleaning gutters.

3.5

3.6 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
 2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing:
1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
 2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered **3-inch (75-mm)** centers.
 3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- C. Copings:
1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
 2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at **16-inch (400-mm)** centers.
 - b. Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at **24-inch (600-mm)** centers.
 3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** over base flashing. Install stainless steel draw band and tighten.
- E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.
1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
 2. Extend counterflashing **4 inches (100 mm)** over base flashing.
 3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)**.
 4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond wall openings.
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING

- A. Equipment Support Flashing:
 - 1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
 - 2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans:
 - 1. Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

3.11 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Roof curbs.
2. Pipe and duct supports.
3. Pipe portals.
4. Preformed flashing sleeves.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
2. Section 233423 "HVAC Power Ventilators" for power roof-mounted ventilators.
3. Section 237413 "Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units" for standard curbs specified with rooftop units.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leak proof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For roof curbs equipment supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof-mounted items to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
 2. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind restraints. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
 4. Required clearances.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design roof curbs and equipment supports to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, integral metal cant, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. AES Industries, Inc.
 - b. Metallic Products Corp.
 - c. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - d. Roof Products, Inc.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Supported Load Capacity: as indicated on drawings>.
- D. Material: Aluminum sheet, **0.090 inch (2.28 mm)** thick.
 - 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - 2. Color: Match Architect's sample or selected from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Material: Stainless-steel sheet, **0.078 inch (1.98 mm)** thick.
 - 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- F. Construction:
 - 1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.

2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
3. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of **12 inches (305 mm)** above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
4. Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange or by use of leveler frame.
5. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surface of perimeter curb is level. Equip unit with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
6. Insulation: Factory insulated with **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** thick glass-fiber board insulation.
7. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
8. Wind Restraint Straps and Base Flange Attachment: Provide wind restraint straps, welded strap connectors, and base flange attachment to roof structure at perimeter of curb, of size and spacing required to meet wind uplift requirements.
9. Platform Cap: Where portion of roof curb is not covered by equipment, provide weathertight platform cap formed from **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** thick plywood covered with metal sheet of same type, thickness, and finish as required for curb.
10. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as curb.
11. Damper Tray: Provide damper tray or shelf with opening **3 inches (76 mm)** less than interior curb dimensions indicated of size indicated.

2.3 PIPE AND DUCT SUPPORTS

- A. Fixed-Height Cradle-Type Pipe Supports: Polycarbonate pipe stand accommodating up to **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** diameter pipe or conduit; with provision for pipe retainer and with manufacturer's support pad or deck plate as recommended for penetration-free installation over roof membrane type; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.
- B. Fixed-Height Roller-Bearing Pipe Supports: Polycarbonate pipe stand with stainless-steel roller carrying assembly accommodating up to **7-inch- (178-mm-)** diameter pipe or conduit; with provision for pipe retainer and with manufacturer's support pad or deck plate as recommended for penetration-free installation over roof membrane type; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.
- C. Adjustable-Height Roller-Bearing Pipe Supports: Polycarbonate pipe stand base, pipe support, and roller housing, with stainless-steel threaded rod designed for adjusting support height, accommodating up to **18 inch (457 mm)** diameter pipe or conduit; with provision for pipe retainer and with manufacturer's support pad or deck plate as recommended for penetration-free installation over roof membrane type; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.
- D. Adjustable-Height Structure-Mounted Pipe Supports: Extruded-aluminum tube, filled with urethane insulation; **2 inches (50 mm)** in diameter; accommodating up to **7-inch- (178-mm-)** diameter pipe or conduit, with provision for pipe retainer; with aluminum baseplate, EPDM base seal, manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck as indicated, stainless-steel roller and retainer, and extruded-aluminum carrier assemblies; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.

- E. Curb-Mounted Pipe Supports: Galvanized steel support with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, integral metal cant, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom; with adjustable-height roller-bearing pipe support accommodating up to **20-inch (508-mm)** diameter pipe or conduit and with provision for pipe retainer; as required for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. MIRO Industries.
 - b. Pate Company (The).
 - c. PHP Systems/Design.
 - d. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
- F. Duct Supports: Extruded-aluminum, urethane-insulated supports, **2 inches (50 mm)** in diameter; with manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

2.4 PIPE PORTALS

- A. As furnished by roof membrane manufacturer compatible with roof membrane system.

2.5 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

- A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, **12 inches (300 mm)** high, with removable metal hood and slotted metal collar.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
 - b. Menzies Metal Products.
 - c. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
 2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)** thick.
 3. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
 4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
 - b. Menzies Metal Products.
 - c. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - d. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)** thick.
3. Height: **7 inches (175 mm)**.
4. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

2.6 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating designation and mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
 2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil (0.013 mm)**.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
 1. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
 2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil (0.013 mm)**.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used; otherwise mill finished.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- E. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube.

- G. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, galvanized.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Underlayment:
 - 1. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
 - 2. Polyethylene Sheet: **6-mil- (0.15-mm-)** thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
 - 3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, **3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m)** minimum, rosin sized.
 - 4. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum **30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm)** thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 5. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 6. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
 - 7. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 8. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- G. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- H. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.

- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586/D 4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.

3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
 - D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
 - E. Roof-Hatch Installation:
 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - F. Heat and Smoke Vent Installation:
 1. Install heat and smoke vent so top perimeter surfaces are level.
 2. Install and test heat and smoke vents and their components for proper operation according to NFPA 204.
 - G. Gravity Ventilator Installation: Verify that gravity ventilators operate properly and have unrestricted airflow. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanisms.
 - H. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.
 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - I. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve and Flashing Pipe Portal Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
 - J. Roof Walkway Installation:
 1. Verify that locations of access and servicing points for roof-mounted equipment are served by locations of roof walkways.
 2. Install roof walkway support pads prior to placement of roof walkway support stands onto low-slope roofing.
 3. Redistribute removed ballast after installation of support pads.
 - K. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.
- 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING
- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.

- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
3. Urethane joint sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** wide joints formed between two **6-inch- (150-mm-)** long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.

2. Manufacturer and product name.
 3. Type of substrate material.
 4. Proposed test.
 5. Number of samples required.
- D. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.
- E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- F. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C 794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C 1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
 3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C 1248 to determine stain potential of sealant when in contact with masonry substrates.
 4. Submit manufacturer's recommended number of pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, joint-sealant backings, and miscellaneous materials.
 5. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.

6. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
 7. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, staining of, and compatibility with joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
 6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Twenty years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
 - b. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
 - c. Pecora Corporation.
 - d. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.

2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.](#)
 - b. BASF Corp. – Construction Chemicals.

2.4 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Pecora Corporation.](#)

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Adfast.](#)
 - b. [Alcot Plastics Ltd.](#)
 - c. [BASF Corp. - Construction Chemicals.](#)
 - d. [Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.](#)

B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or

harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to

comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
 - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated on Drawings according to Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.

- a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior and interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Perimeter joints between frames of doors windows and louvers.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors .
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry walls.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 079219 - ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical joint sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric, latex, and butyl-rubber-based joint sealants for nonacoustical applications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each acoustical joint sealant.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of acoustical joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** wide joints formed between two **6-inch- (150-mm-)** long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Acoustical-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each kind of acoustical joint sealant, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace acoustical joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish acoustical joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide acoustical joint-sealant products that effectively reduce airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction, as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E90.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex acoustical sealant complying with ASTM C834.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Pecora Corporation.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated.
 - e. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Colors of Exposed Acoustical Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber acoustical sealant.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
 - b. Serious Energy Inc.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive acoustical joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing acoustical joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical joint sealant. Install acoustical joint sealants at both faces of partitions, at perimeters, and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919, ASTM C1193, and manufacturer's written recommendations for closing off

sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions to underside of floor slabs above acoustical ceilings.

- C. Acoustical Ceiling Areas: Apply acoustical joint sealant at perimeter edge moldings of acoustical ceiling areas in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of acoustical joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect acoustical joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated acoustical joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 079219

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
7. Details of accessories.
8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

- C. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
 - 1. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.
- B. Field quality control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of egress door assemblies shall meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
 - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
 - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Any current member of the Steel Door Institute.
 2. Apex Industries, Inc.
 3. Daybar Industries, Ltd.
 4. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; Assa Abloy Group Company.
 5. National Custom Hollow Metal Doors & Frames.
 6. Rocky Mountain Metals, Inc.
 7. Steelcraft; an Allegion brand.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- B. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than **0.40 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. (2.27 W/K x sq. m)** when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Standard-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 1; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level C..
1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: **1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm)**.
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.032 inch (0.8 mm)**.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Bevel lock and hinge edges **1/8 inch in 2 inches (3.2 mm in 51 mm)**.
 - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
 - g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener laminated mineral board core for fire-rateddoors.

2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm).
 - b. Sidelite] and [Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
 - c. Construction: Full profile welded.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.

1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), with minimum A60 (ZF180) coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Bevel lock and hinge edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3.2 mm in 51 mm).
 - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
 - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
 - h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), with minimum A60 (ZF180) coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 RAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.

2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each **24 inches (610 mm)** of frame height above **7 feet (2.1 m)**.
 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum **3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-)** diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than **2-inch (51-mm)** height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), **04Z (12G)** coating designation; mill phosphatized.
1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.

1. Sidelite] and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding, or by rigid mechanical anchors.
 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- B. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- C. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted hairline joints.
1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with square stops unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
 4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
 5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches (230 mm)** o.c. and not more than **2 inches (51 mm)** o.c. from each corner.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

2.9 LOUVERS

- A. Form corners of moldings with hairline joints. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
 - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
 - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
 - 5. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
 - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.

3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors in accordance with NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspections:

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.

2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

D. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 REPAIR

A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Door core materials and construction.
2. Door edge construction
3. Door face type and characteristics.
4. Door trim for openings.
5. Door frame construction.
6. Factory-machining criteria.
7. Factory- finishing specifications.

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
 - 2. Submit copy of DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranties.
- B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 - 1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.

- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during remainder of construction period.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Delamination of veneer.
 - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section.
 - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 76.2-mm) span.
 - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Exterior Doors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.
 - 5. Warranty Period for Hollow-Core Interior Doors: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WT's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with the Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.

2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Doors:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Lambton Doors.](#)
 - b. [Masonite Architectural.](#)
 - c. [Oshkosh Door Company.](#)
 - d. [VT Industries Inc.](#)
2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty.
3. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than **1/50 inch (0.508 mm)** thick.
 - a. Species: Red oak.
 - b. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
 - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
 - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
 - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening.
4. Exposed Vertical Edges: Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
 - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
 - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
5. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
 - a. ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 particleboard.
 - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as
 - b. Glued wood stave.
 - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.

- 1) Screw Withdrawal, Door Face: 475 lbf (2110 N).
 - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Door Edge: 550 lbf (2440 N) [400 lbf (1780 N)].
- d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
6. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
- a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings
7. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Factory finish doors that are indicated on Drawings to receive transparent finish.
- D. Factory finish doors where indicated in schedules or on Drawings as factory finished.

- E. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Architectural Woodwork Standards ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.
 - 2. Finish: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-6 Catalyzed Polyurethane.
 - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
 - 5. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections:
 - 1. Provide inspection of installed Work through AWI's Quality Certification Program, certifying that wood doors and frames, including installation, comply with requirements of AWI/AWMCA/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for the specified grade.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
 - 3. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

- C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 084313 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Storefront framing.
- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Preconstruction laboratory mockup source quality control and field quality control is part of testing and inspecting allowance.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.

- e. Flashing and drainage.
- 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Mockup Testing Submittals:
 - 1. Testing Program: Developed specifically for Project.
 - 2. Test Reports: Prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency for each mockup test.
 - 3. Record Drawings: As-built drawings of preconstruction laboratory mockups showing changes made during preconstruction laboratory mockup testing.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer and field testing agency.
- C. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed storefront.
- D. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed storefronts, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront to include in maintenance manuals. Include ASTM C 1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Laboratory Mockup Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401 for design and installation of storefront systems.

1.9 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Testing will not be required if data based on previous testing of current sealant products match those submitted.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.

- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Arcadia, Inc.
 2. EFCO Corporation.
 3. Kawneer North America, an Arconic company.
 4. Manko
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed storefront system, including framing spandrel panels and accessories, from single manufacturer.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product:
 1. Kawneer Company Inc.: Trifab™ 451T (Thermal) Framing System

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 1. Aluminum-framed storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 2. Failure also includes the following:

- a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Structural Loads:
1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding 1/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to **3/4 inch (19.1 mm)**, whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**, whichever is smaller.
 - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** clearance between framing members and operable units.
 3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows:
 - a. Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus **1/4 inch (6.35 mm)** for spans greater than **11 feet 8-1/4 inches (3.6 m)** or 1/175 times span, for spans less than **11 feet 8-1/4 inches (3.6 m)**.
- D. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330/E 330M as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Air Leakage: The test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283. Air Leakage rate shall not exceed 0.06 cfm/ft² (0.3 l/s · m²) at a static air pressure differential of 6.2 psf (300 Pa) with interior seal, or, rate shall not exceed 0.06 cfm/ft² (0.3 l/s · m²) at a static air pressure differential of 1.6 psf (75 Pa) without interior seal. CSA A440 Fixed Rating.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:

1. Water Infiltration Tests: Conduct tests in accordance with ASTM E 1105. There shall be no leakage at a minimum static air pressure differential of 8 psf (383 Pa) as defined in AAMA 501.
- G. Uniform Load: A static air design load of 35 psf (1680 Pa) shall be applied in the positive and negative direction in accordance with ASTM E 330. There shall be no deflection in excess of $L/175$ of the span of any framing member. At a structural test load equal to 1.5 times the specified design load, no glass breakage or permanent set in the framing members in excess of 0.2% of their clear spans shall occur.
- H. Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed storefronts shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. Seismic Drift Causing Glass Fallout: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested to AAMA 501.4, system must meet design displacement of $0.010 \times$ the story height and ultimate displacement of $1.5 \times$ the design displacement..
- I. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have U-factor of not more than $0.24 \text{ Btu/sq. ft.} \times \text{h} \times \text{deg F}$ as determined according to NFRC 100.
 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have a SHGC of no greater than 0.26 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 75 as determined according to NFRC 500.
 4. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 26.
- J. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 1. Allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures:
 - a. Temperature Change (Range): 0 deg F (-18 deg C); 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - b. Test Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: .
 - c. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5 for a minimum 3 cycles.

2.3 STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Thermal Barrier (Trifab™ VG 451T):
 1. Kawneer IsoLock™ Thermal Break with a 1/4" (6.4 mm) separation consisting of a two-part chemically curing, high-density polyurethane, which is mechanically and adhesively joined to aluminum storefront sections.
 - a. Thermal Break shall be designed in accordance with AAMA TIR-A8 and tested in accordance with AAMA 505.

- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with non-staining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials. Where exposes shall be stainless steel.
- D. Perimeter Anchors: When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action
- E. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- F. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions. Handle storefront material and components to avoid damage. Protect storefront material against damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after storefront installation. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
 - 2. Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
 - 3. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 4. Glazing Plane: Match existing placement.
 - 5. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
 - 6. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
 - 7. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - 8. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- G. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- H. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, extruded EPDM rubber, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.

1. Color: Match structural sealant.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum storefront manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish and not less than 0.070" (1.8 mm) wall thickness at any location for the main frame and complying with ASTM B 221: 6063-T6 alloy and temper.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel or other materials to be non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum framing members, trim hardware, anchors, and other components.
- C. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- D. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- E. Sealant: For sealants required within fabricated storefront system, provide permanently elastic, non-shrinking, and non-migrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size and movement.
- F. Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of storefront members are nominal and in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and Data. Sheet and Plate: [ASTM B 209](#) ([ASTM B 209M](#)).
- G. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: [ASTM B 221](#) ([ASTM B 221M](#)).
- H. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
- I. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
- J. Steel Reinforcement:
 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
 4. Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, **0.018-inch- (0.457-mm-)** thick stainless steel, complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, of type recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for **30-mil (0.762-mm)** thickness per coat.
- E. Rigid PVC Filler.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 - 1. Color: Clear anodic finish.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).**
 - 2. Level: **1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6.35 mm in 12.2 m).**
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch (1.6 mm).**
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from **1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm)** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/8 inch (3.2 mm).**
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of **1 inch (25.4 mm)** wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to **1/4 inch (6 mm).**
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** over total length.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed storefronts.
 - 1. In accordance with Section 019117 Functional Performance Testing.
- C. Aluminum-framed storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084313

BLANK PAGE

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware for:
 - a. Swinging doors.
 - b. Sliding doors.
2. Electronic access control system components

B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for alternates affecting this section.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
 - a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
 - b. "Flush Wood Doors"
 - c. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
6. Division 09 sections for touchup, finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.
7. Division 26 "Electrical" sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
8. Division 28 "Electronic Safety and Security" sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. UL - Underwriters Laboratories

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware

B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute

1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware

C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association

1. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
2. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
3. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
4. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

1. ANSI A117.1 – 2017 Edition – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
2. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
3. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems
4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors
5. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Standard Steel Doors and Frames

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
 - a. Comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, "EXAMINATION" article, herein.
 - b. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
 - c. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
 - a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.

4. Door Hardware Schedule:

- a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
- b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
- c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
 - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
 - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
 - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
 - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
 - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
 - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.

5. Key Schedule:

- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
 - b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
 - c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
 - d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
 - e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
 - f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.
6. Templates: After final approval of hardware schedule, provide templates for doors, frames and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared for door hardware installation.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Provide Product Data:
 - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
 - b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
 - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
 - b. Catalog pages for each product.
 - c. Factory order acknowledgement numbers (for warranty and service)
 - d. Name, address, and phone number of local representative for each manufacturer.
 - e. Parts list for each product.
 - f. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as installed.
 - g. Final keying schedule
 - h. Copies of floor plans with keying nomenclature
 - i. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
 - j. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.

E. Inspection and Testing:

1. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each fire door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.
2. Submit a written report of the results of functional testing and inspection for required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.
 - a. Written report to be provided to the Owner and be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 - b. Report to include the door number for each required egress door assembly, door location, door and frame material, fire rating, and summary of deficiencies.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that provides certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
 - a. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
 - b. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
 - c. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies like those indicated for this Project.

- d. Coordination Responsibility: Assist in coordinating installation of electronic security hardware with Architect and electrical engineers and provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - 1) Upon completion of electronic security hardware installation, inspect and verify that all components are working properly.
 2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
 3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
 - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
 - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
 - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.
 4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
- B. Certifications:
1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
 - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
 2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
 - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
 - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
 3. Electrified Door Hardware
 - a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Accessibility Requirements:
 - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article 087100, 1.02.D3 herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route. This project must comply with all Federal Americans with Disability Act regulations and all Local Accessibility Regulations.

C. Pre-Installation Meetings

1. Keying Conference

- a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
 - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3) Requirements for key control system.
 - 4) Address for delivery of keys.

2. Pre-installation Conference

- a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
- c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
- d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
- e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.

3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:

- a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.
- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.
- E. Existing Openings: Where existing doors, frames and/or hardware are to remain, field verify existing functions, conditions and preparations and coordinate to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.
 - a. Mechanical Warranty
 - 1) Locks
 - a) Falcon: 10 year
 - 2) Exit Devices
 - a) Falcon: 10 year
 - 3) Closers
 - a) Falcon SC Series: 10 year
 - 4) Automatic Operators
 - a) LCN: 2 year
 - 5) Accessories
 - a) Ives Continuous Hinges: Lifetime
 - b. Electrical Warranty
 - 1) Locks
 - a) Falcon: 1 year
 - 2) Exit Devices
 - a) Falcon: 1 year

1.08 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.

- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Fasteners

- 1. Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
 - 2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
 - 3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units exposed when door is closed except when no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless thru-bolts are required to fasten hardware securely. Review door specification and advise Architect if thru bolts are required.
 - 4. Install hardware with fasteners provided by hardware manufacturer.
- B. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
- 1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

2.03 HINGES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Ives 5BB series
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Stanley FBB series
 - b. Bommer BB5000 series

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
- 2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
- 3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
- 4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:

- a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
5. 2 inches or thicker doors:
- a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
8. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
9. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
- a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
 - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
10. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with enough and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Select
 - b. ABH

B. Requirements:

1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with enough and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

2.05 ELECTRIC POWER TRANSFER

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Von Duprin EPT-10
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. ABH PT1000
 - b. Precision EPT-12C

B. Requirements:

1. Provide power transfer with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
2. Locate electric power transfer per manufacturer's template and UL requirements, unless interference with operation of door or other hardware items.

2.06 MORTISE LOCKS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Falcon MA series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin ML2000 series
 - b. Sargent 8200 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide mortise locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
2. Provide locks manufactured from heavy gauge steel, containing components of steel with a zinc dichromate plating for corrosion resistance.
3. Provide lock case that is multi-function and field reversible for handing without opening case. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
4. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset with full 3/4 inch (19 mm) throw stainless steel mechanical anti-friction latchbolt. Provide deadbolt with full 1-inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of stainless steel.
5. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.

6. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Where scheduled, provide a request to exit (RX) switch that is actuated with rotation of inside lever.
7. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
 - a. Lever Design: Dane.

2.07 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 1

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Falcon T series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Corbin-Ruswin CL3300 series
 - b. Sargent 10-Line

B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
7. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
8. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts and wrought roses on both sides.
 - a. Lever Design: Dane.

2.08 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Falcon 24/25 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Sargent 19-43-GL-80 series
 - b. Precision Apex series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
7. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
8. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
9. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
10. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
11. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
12. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
13. Provide electrified options as scheduled.
14. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

2.09 ELECTRIC STRIKES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Von Duprin 6000 Series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Folger Adam 300 Series
 - b. HES 1006 Series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide electric strikes designed for use with type of locks shown at each opening.
2. Provide electric strikes UL Listed as burglary resistant.
3. Where required, provide electric strikes UL Listed for fire doors and frames.
4. Provide transformers and rectifiers for each strike as required. Verify voltage with electrical contractor.

2.10 POWER SUPPLIES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:

- a. Schlage/Von Duprin PS900 Series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Precision ELR series
 - b. Sargent 3500 series
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide power supplies approved by manufacturer of supplied electrified hardware.
 2. Provide appropriate quantity of power supplies necessary for proper operation of electrified locking components as recommended by manufacturer of electrified locking components with consideration for each electrified component using power supply, location of power supply, and approved wiring diagrams. Locate power supplies as directed by Architect.
 3. Provide regulated and filtered 24 VDC power supply, and UL class 2 listed.
 4. Provide power supplies with the following features:
 - a. 12/24 VDC Output, field selectable.
 - b. Class 2 Rated power limited output.
 - c. Universal 120-240 VAC input.
 - d. Low voltage DC, regulated and filtered.
 - e. Polarized connector for distribution boards.
 - f. Fused primary input.
 - g. AC input and DC output monitoring circuit w/LED indicators.
 - h. Cover mounted AC Input indication.
 - i. Tested and certified to meet UL294.
 - j. NEMA 1 enclosure.
 - k. Hinged cover w/lock down screws.
 - l. High voltage protective cover.

2.11 CYLINDERS

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Schlage Everest 29 S
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Corbin-Russwin Patented Keyway
 - b. Sargent DG1
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide cylinders/cores compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset; manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
 2. Provide cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
 - a. Conventional Patented Open: cylinder with with open keyway.

3. Patent Protection: Cylinders/cores requiring use of restricted, patented keys, patent protected.
 4. Nickel silver bottom pins.
- C. Construction Keying:
1. Replaceable Construction Cores.
 - a. Provide temporary construction cores replaceable by permanent cores, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
 - 1) 3 construction control keys
 - 2) 12 construction change (day) keys.
 - b. Owner or Owner's Representative will replace temporary construction cores with permanent cores.

2.12 KEYING

- A. Provide a factory registered keying system, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
 - a. Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
 2. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 3. Provide keys with the following features:
 - a. Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
 - b. Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s).
 4. Identification:
 - a. Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
 - b. Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
 - c. Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
 - d. Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 - e. Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
 5. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
 - a. Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
 - b. Permanent Control Keys: 3.

- c. Master Keys: 6.

2.13 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Telkee
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. HPC
 - b. Lund

B. Requirements:

1. Provide key control system, including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of number of locks required for Project.
 - a. Provide complete cross index system set up by hardware supplier, and place keys on markers and hooks in cabinet as determined by final key schedule.
 - b. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.

2.14 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Falcon SC70A series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. LCN 4050 series
 - b. Norton 7500 series
 - c. Sargent 351 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with aluminum cylinder.
3. Closer Body: 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) diameter with 5/8-inch (16 mm) diameter heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.

5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
8. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.15 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Falcon SC80A series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. LCN 1450 series
 - b. Norton 8000 series
 - c. Sargent 1331 series

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with aluminum cylinder.
3. Closer Body: 1-1/4-inch (32 mm) diameter, with 5/8-inch (16 mm) diameter heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
8. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.16 ELECTRO-HYDRAULIC AUTOMATIC OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. LCN 4600 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:

a. Besam Power Swing

B. Requirements:

1. Provide low energy automatic operator units with hydraulic closer complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.
2. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
3. Provide units with conventional door closer opening and closing forces unless power operator motor is activated. Provide door closer assembly with adjustable spring size, back-check, and opening and closing speed adjustment valves to control door
4. Provide units with on/off switch for manual operation, motor start up delay, vestibule interface delay, electric lock delay, and door hold open delay.
5. Provide drop plates, brackets, and adapters for arms as required for details.
6. Provide hard-wired actuator switches and receivers for operation as specified.
7. Provide weather-resistant actuators at exterior applications.
8. Provide key switches with LED's, recommended and approved by manufacturer of automatic operator as required for function described in operation description of hardware group below. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
9. Provide complete assemblies of controls, switches, power supplies, relays, and parts/material recommended and approved by manufacturer of automatic operator for each individual leaf. Actuators control both doors simultaneously at pairs. Sequence operation of exterior and vestibule doors with automatic operators to allow ingress or egress through both sets of openings as directed by Architect. Locate actuators, key switches, and other controls as directed by Architect.
10. Provide units with vestibule inputs that allow sequencing operation of two units, and SPDT relay for interfacing with latching or locking devices.

2.17 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Rockwood

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, pulls, and hands-free reversible door pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

2.18 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:

- a. Ives
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Rockwood
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
 2. Size plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
 3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

2.19 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
 - a. Glynn-Johnson
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Sargent
 - b. ABH
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
 2. Provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

2.20 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Trimco
 - b. Rockwood
- B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:
 1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button of thumbturn.

2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

2.21 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Zero International
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. National Guard
 - b. Pemko

B. Requirements:

1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

2.22 SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Rockwood
 - b. Trimco

B. Requirements:

1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

2.23 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Schlage
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. GE-Interlogix

B. Requirements:

1. Provide recessed or surface mounted type door position switches as specified.
2. Coordinate door and frame preparations with door and frame suppliers. If switches are being used with magnetic locking device, provide minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) between switch and magnetic locking device.

2.24 COAT HOOKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Burns
 - b. Rockwood

B. Provide coat hooks as specified.

2.25 FINISHES

A. Finish: BHMA 626/652 (US26D); except:

1. Hinges at Exterior Doors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
2. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
3. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
4. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
5. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
6. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
7. Latch Protectors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
8. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
9. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Field verify existing doors and frames receiving new hardware and existing conditions receiving new openings. Verify that new hardware is compatible with existing door and frame preparation and existing conditions.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- D. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Where on-site modification of doors and frames is required:
 - 1. Carefully remove existing door hardware and components being reused. Clean, protect, tag, and store in accordance with storage and handling requirements specified herein.
 - 2. Field modify and prepare existing doors and frames for new hardware being installed.
 - 3. When modifications are exposed to view, use concealed fasteners, when possible.
 - 4. Prepare hardware locations and reinstall in accordance with installation requirements for new door hardware and with:
 - a. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
 - b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
 - c. Doors in rated assemblies: NFPA 80 for restrictions on on-site door hardware preparation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 - 3. Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A
 - 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware: DHI TDH-007-20
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- F. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.

- G. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- H. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL and Division 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections for:
 - 1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
 - 2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.
 - 3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
 - 4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.
 - 5. Connections to panel interface modules, controllers, and gateways.
 - 6. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.
- I. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- J. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- K. Closer/holders: Mount closer/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- L. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.
- M. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- N. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- O. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- P. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- Q. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 - 1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door can close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.
 - 2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
 - 3. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.06 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.
- C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- D. Hardware Sets:

Abbreviation	Name
ADA	Adams Rite Manufacturing Co
FAL	Falcon
GLY	Glynn-Johnson Corp
IVE	H.B. Ives
KNC	K.N. Crowder Mfg. Inc.
LCN	Lcn Commercial Division
SCE	Schlage Electronic Security
SCH	Schlage Lock Company
VON	Von Duprin
ZER	Zero International Inc

OPT0209081 Version 1

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 01

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	✎ 689	VON
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	MA881-24B DG 24VDC	✎ 626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC71A SS	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	8303AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT15/MT11 BY DIV 28	✎ BLK	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	✎ BLK	SCE
1	SET	LOW VOLTAGE POWER	BY DIVISION 28		

DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND SECURE. USER PRESENTS CREDENTIAL MOMENTARILY RELEASING THE LEVER, USER ROTATES LEVER FOR ENTRY, EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY INTERIOR LEVER. REQUEST TO EXIT IS IN LOCKSET. DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED BY ACCESS CONTROL/SECURITY SYSTEM.

CRSA Project: 20-028

June 24, 2021

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 02

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	T581B DAN	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	ELECTRIC STRIKE	6211 FSE 12/16/24/28 VAC/VDC	✎ 630	VON
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT15/MT11 BY DIV 28	✎ BLK	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	✎ BLK	SCE
1	SET	LOW VOLTAGE POWER	BY DIVISION 28		

OPERATION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ENTRY BY CARD READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER. DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED THROUGH ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY INSIDE LEVER.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 03

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	T581B DAN	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	ELECTRIC STRIKE	6211 FSE 12/16/24/28 VAC/VDC	✎ 630	VON
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT15/MT11 BY DIV 28	✎ BLK	SCE
1	EA	DESK MOUNT BUTTON	660-PB	✎ 628	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	✎ BLK	SCE
1	SET	LOW VOLTAGE POWER	BY DIVISION 28		

OPERATION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ENTRY BY CARD READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER. DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED THROUGH ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY INSIDE LEVER. REMOTE RELEASE BY DESK MOUNTED BUTTON

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 04

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	T581B DAN	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

CRSA Project: 20-028

June 24, 2021

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 05

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	T561B DAN	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 06

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ENTRY / OFFICE LOCK	T511B DAN	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	COAT AND HAT HOOK	507	626	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 07

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	MA311 OCCUPIED/VACANT DGM	626	FAL
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 08

Each to have:

3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	T101 DAN	626	FAL
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA	689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 09

Each to have:

1	EA	BYPASS TRACK AND HARDWARE	C-500F-W		KNC
2	EA	FLUSH PULL	221	626	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. A1

Each to have:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	628	IVE
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-MEL-24-R-NL-OP 24 VDC	⚡ 626	FAL
1	EA	RIM HOUSING	C953	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190HD 10" STD	630	IVE
1	EA	OH STOP	100S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURF. AUTO OPERATOR	4642 CS TBWMS 120 VAC	⚡ 689	LCN
1	EA	WEATHER RING	8310-801	PLA	LCN
2	EA	ACTUATOR, TOUCH	8310-853	⚡ 630	LCN
1	EA	FLUSH MOUNT BOX	8310-867F	⚡ 689	LCN
1	EA	SURFACE MOUNT BOX	8310-867S	⚡ 689	LCN
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKET	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	THRESHOLD	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	MULTITECH READER	MT15/MT11 BY DIV 28	⚡ BLK	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	⚡ BLK	SCE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	⚡ BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 120/240 VAC	⚡	VON

OPERATION: AUTO LOCK/UNLOCK THROUGH ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM FOR PUSH/PULL OPERATION DURING NORMAL BUSINESS HOURS. AFTER HOURS USER PRESENTS CREDENTIAL, EXIT DEVICE LATCH RETRACTS, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER. REQUEST TO EXIT IS PART OF EXIT DEVICE, DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED BY ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM. ENTRY BY AUTO OPERATOR BY PRESSING ACTUATOR WHEN DOORS ARE UNLOCKED. EXIT BY AUTO OPERATOR AT ALL TIMES, PRESSING THE INTERIOR ACTUATOR WILL RETRACT THE EXIT DEVICES AND CYCLE THE OPERATOR. MANUAL EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. A2

Each to have:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY	628	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	24-R-NL-OP	626	FAL
1	EA	RIM HOUSING	C953	626	FAL
1	EA	SFIC EVEREST CORE	80-037 EV29 R	626	SCH
1	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190HD 10" STD	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC71A HDPA	689	FAL
1	EA	FLOOR STOP	FS18S	BLK	IVE
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKET	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	THRESHOLD	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		

HARDWARE GROUP NO. A3 - Not Used

HARDWARE GROUP NO. A4

Each to have:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY	628	IVE
1	EA	PUSH/PULL BAR	9190HD-10"-NS	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC71A HDP	689	FAL
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKET	BY DOOR ASSEMBLY MANUFACTURER		

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, storefront framing, welding.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.
 - 3. Miscellaneous glazing materials.
 - 4.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 084313 "Aluminum Framed Storefronts."
 - 2. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of; 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 1. Coated glass.
 2. Laminated glass.
 3. Insulating glass.
 4. Privacy Film (Offices)
- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants, in 12-inch (300-mm) lengths.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-E coatings.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tinted glass coated glass insulating glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Install glazing in mockups specified in Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" Section 085113 "Aluminum Windows" Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
 - 1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
 - 2. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
 - 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 1. AGC Glass Company North America, Inc.
 2. Pilkington North America.
 3. Trulite Glass & Aluminum Solutions, LLC.
 4. Viracon, Inc.
 5. Vitro Architectural Glass.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
 1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.

- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
 - 1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Thickness of Patterned Glass: Base design of patterned glass on thickness at thinnest part of the glass.
 - 4. Probability of Breakage for Sloped Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped more than 15 degrees from vertical, design glass for a probability of breakage not greater than 0.001.
 - 5. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or **1 inch (25 mm)**, whichever is less.
 - 6. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall comply with basic-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 1 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on Project.
 - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within **30 feet (9.1 m)** of grade.
 - 2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located more than **30 feet (9.1 m)** above grade.
- E. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- F. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
 - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
 - 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.

4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as $\text{Btu/sq. ft.} \times \text{h} \times \text{deg F} (\text{W/sq. m} \times \text{K})$.
5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- C. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 1. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- D. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.
- C. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
 2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 4. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
 - b. Sika Corporation.
 - c. Thiokol Base.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated.

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 2. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.
- G. Decorative Glass and Window Film: Opacity as selected from the full range of manufactures gradations.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than **50 inches (1270 mm)**.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and

- glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide **1/8-inch (3-mm)** minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
 - G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
 - H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
 - I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
 - J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
 - K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.7 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type GL-4: Clear fully tempered float glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
- B. Glass Type GL-5: Clear fully annealed float glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm

3.8 LAMINATED GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type GL-3: Clear laminated glass with two plies of fully tempered float glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 4 mm.
 - 2. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm).
 - 3. Safety glazing required.

3.9 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type GL-1: Low-E-coated, clear insulating glass.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Vitro Architectural Glass; Solarban 70 XL.
 - 2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
 - 3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
 - 4. Outdoor Lite: Annealed float glass. Optigray.
 - 5. Interspace Content: Air.
 - 6. Indoor Lite: Annealed float glass.
 - 7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on third surface.
 - 8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor:.28 maximum.
 - 9. Summer Daytime U-Factor:.28 maximum.
 - 10. Visible Light Transmittance: 15 percent minimum.
 - 11. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient:.15 maximum.
 - 12. Safety glazing required.
- B. Glass Type GL-2: Low-E-coated, clear insulating glass.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Vitro Architectural Glass; Solarban 70 XL.
 - 2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
 - 3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
 - 4. Outdoor Lite: Fully tempered float glass. Optigray.
 - 5. Interspace Content: Air.
 - 6. Indoor Lite: Fully tempered float glass.
 - 7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on third surface.
 - 8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor:.28 maximum.
 - 9. Summer Daytime U-Factor:.28 maximum.
 - 10. Visible Light Transmittance: 15 percent minimum.
 - 11. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient:.15 maximum.

4.0 DECORATIVE GLASS AND WINDOW FILM

- A. Office Window Privacy Film.
 - 1. Basis of Design 3M Fasara Glass Finishes – YAMATO
 - 2. Product Code: SH2PTYA
 - 3. Product Family: Fabric/Japan Paper
 - 4. Film Type: Polyester
 - 5. Adhesive Type: Pressure-sensitive
 - 6. Usage: Interior
 - 7. Width: 50 inch (1270mm)
 - 8. Length: 98.4 linear feet (30m)
 - 9. Shading Coefficient: (%) 0.89
 - 10. Visible Light Reflectance: (%) 15
 - 11. Visible Light Transmittance: (%) 79

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Tile backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for acoustical joint sealants installed in gypsum board assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Gypsum wallboard.
2. Gypsum board, Type X.
3. Water-resistant gypsum backing board.
4. Joint treatment materials.
5. Sound-attenuation blankets.
6. Acoustical sealant.

B. Samples: For the following products:

1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in **12-inch-** (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned enough to protect from moisture damage and freezing temperatures .
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
 - c. Continental Building Products, LLC.
 - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - e. National Gypsum Company.
 - f. PABCO Gypsum.
 - g. Panel Rey SA.
 - h. USG Corporation.
 2. Thickness: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm).**
 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.

- b. [Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.](#)
- c. [Continental Building Products, LLC.](#)
- d. [Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.](#)
- e. [National Gypsum Company.](#)
- f. [PABCO Gypsum.](#)
- g. [USG Corporation.](#)
2. Core: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, Type X.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.
4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.4 SPECIALTY GYPSUM BOARD

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C1178/C1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.](#)
 - b. [Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.](#)
 - c. [National Gypsum Company.](#)
 - d. [USG Corporation.](#)
 2. Core: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, Type X.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet No-Coat Drywall Corners and Trim.
 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - f. Expansion (control) joint.
 - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- 1)

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.
 - 3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
 - 4. .

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- B. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- C. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."
- D. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

- E. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072600 "Vapor Retarders."

2.9 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Non-Aggregate Finish: Premixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.
 - c. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Texture: Spatter knock-down.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than **8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m)** in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow **1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-)** wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- H. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 3. Ceiling Type: As indicated on Drawings Ceiling surfaces.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
 - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, **16 inches (400 mm)** minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at showers, tubs, and where indicated. Install with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install where indicated with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.7 INSTALLATION OF TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture matching approved mockup and free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.
- C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pressed floor tile.
2. Porcelain tile.
3. Glazed wall tile.
4. Thresholds.
5. Waterproof membranes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for glass-mat, water-resistant backer board.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification:
1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory.
 3. Stone thresholds in 6-inch (150-mm) lengths.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
 - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
 - 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish tile from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Stone thresholds.
 - 2. Waterproof membrane.
 - 3. Crack isolation membrane.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Porcelain Tile Type: Glazed.

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Crossville, Inc.](#); Basalt Porcelain Stone or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Marazzi Tile, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Daltile.](#)
 - c. [Florida Tile, Inc.](#)
2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
3. Face Size: **11-13/16 by 11-13/16 inches (300 by 300 mm).**
4. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
5. Thickness: **3/8 inch (9.5 mm).**
6. Face: Plain with square or cushion edges.
7. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
8. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As per finish scheduled and as shown on drawings.
9. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Base Cap: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile.
 - b. External Corners: Surface bullnose, module size.
 - c. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners.

B. Glazed Wall Tile Type See finish schedule and elevations:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Arizona Tile; Bare Series or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Marazzi Tile, Inc.](#)
 - b. [American Olean; a division of Dal-Tile Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Daltile.](#)
2. Module Size: 4x 15 and 12 x 24
3. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
4. Thickness: **5/16 inch (8 mm).**
5. Face: Plain with modified square edges or cushion edges.
6. Finish: Bright, clear glaze.
7. Tile Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Wainscot Cap for Flush Conditions: Regular flat tile for conditions where tile wainscot is shown flush with wall surface above it, same size as adjoining flat tile.

- b. External Corners for Thinset Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose, same size as adjoining flat tile.
- c. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners. For coved base and cap use angle pieces designed to fit with stretcher shapes.

2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Granite Thresholds: ASTM C615/C615M, with honed finish.
- C. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C503/C503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 according to ASTM C1353 or ASTM C241/C241M and with honed finish.
 1. Description:
 - a. Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANES and Crack Isolation

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Waterproof Membrane, Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Nonplasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with nonwoven polyester fabric.
 1. Nominal Thickness: **0.030 inch (0.76 mm)**.
- C. Waterproof Membrane, Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS (Floors)

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
 1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, **4.0 mils (0.1 mm)** thick.

2. Expanded Metal Lath: Diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C847.
 - a. Base Metal and Finish for Interior Applications: Uncoated or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, with uncoated steel sheet painted after fabrication into lath.
 - b. Base Metal and Finish for Exterior Applications: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
 - c. Configuration over Studs and Furring: Flat.
 - d. Configuration over Solid Surfaces: Self-furring.
 - e. Weight: [**2.5 lb/sq. yd. (1.4 kg/sq. m)**] [**3.4 lb/sq. yd. (1.8 kg/sq. m)**].
3. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.

B. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ARDEX Americas.
 - b. Custom Building Products.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ARDEX Americas.
 - b. Custom Building Products.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 2. Polymer Type:
 - a. Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils (0.1 mm) thick.
- C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- D. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.

2.9 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with bonded mortar bed or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

- a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors consisting of tiles **8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm)** or larger.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.

- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
1. Pressed Floor Tile: [**1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**] [**3/8 inch (9.5 mm)**].
 2. Glazed Wall Tile: [**1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**] [**1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**].
 3. Porcelain Tile: [**1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**] [**3/8 inch (9.5 mm)**].
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
 2. Do not extend waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in modified dry-set or improved modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- K. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
 - 1. TCNA F112 and ANSI A108.1A: Cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to concrete.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: Porcelain
 - b. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Modified dry-set mortar.
 - c. Grout: High-performance sanded grout.
- B. interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
 - 1. TCNA W244C or TCNA W244F Glazed wall ceramic tile: Thinset mortar on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board.

- a. Ceramic Tile Type: Glazed wall ceramic tile
- b. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set mortar.
- c. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 095123 "Acoustical Tile Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of mineral-base acoustical tiles used with fully concealed suspension systems, stapling, or adhesive bonding.
- C. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **6 inches (150 mm)** in size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of sizes indicated below:
 - 1. Acoustical Panels: Set of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
 - 2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** long Samples of each type, finish, and color.
 - 3. Clips: Full-size seismic clips.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints for ceiling systems.
 - 1. Include design calculations for seismic restraints including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
 4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Diffusers.
 - c. Grilles.
 - d. Speakers.
 - e. Sprinklers.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
 7. Minimum Drawing Scale: **1/8 inch = 1 foot (1:96)**.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
 - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E1264.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Rockfon \(Rockwool International\)](#); Rockfon Alaska, Tegular edge, or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. [American Gypsum](#).
 2. [Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions](#).
 3. [Cardinal Acoustics, Inc.](#)
 4. [Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN](#).
 5. [USG Corporation](#).
- B. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Color: White.
- D. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less than 0.85.
- E. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.90.
- F. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 180.
- G. Edge/Joint Detail: Reveal sized to fit flange of exposed suspension-system members [**As indicated by manufacturer's designation**] <Insert requirement>.
- H. Thickness: **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
- I. Modular Size: **24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm)**.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Rockfon \(Rockwool International\)](#) ; Chicago Metallic 4000 Tempra 9/16” or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. [Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions](#).
 2. [Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN](#).
 3. [USG Corporation](#).
- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C635/C635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
- C. Narrow-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, **G30 (Z90)** coating designation; with prefinished **9/16-inch- (15-mm-)** wide metal caps on flanges.

1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel.
5. Cap Finish: Painted white.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 2. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than **0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-)** diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than **7/8 inch (22 mm)** wide; formed with **0.04-inch- (1-mm-)** thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating designation; with bolted connections and **5/16-inch- (8-mm-)** diameter bolts.
- F. Impact Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-clip system designed to absorb impact forces against acoustical panels.
- G. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical panels in place during a seismic event.
- H. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- I. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Rockfon (Rockwool International); or a comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 2. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
 3. USG Corporation.
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with

seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.

1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- C. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Comply with ASTM C635/C635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C636/C636M, seismic design requirements, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 6. Do not attach hangers to roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 - 7. Space hangers not more than **48 inches (1200 mm)** o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than **8 inches (200 mm)** from ends of each member.
 - 8. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
 - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. and not more than **3 inches (75 mm)** from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
 - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
 - b. Install panels with pattern running in one direction parallel to long [**short**] axis of space.
 - c. Install panels in a basket-weave pattern.
 2. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
 3. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
 4. Install seismic clips in areas indicated; space according to panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Hold-Down Clips: Space **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. on all cross runners.
 5. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts according to requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m)**, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m)**, non-cumulative.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no panels have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.
1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for **200 lbf (890 N)** of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for **440 lbf (1957 N)** of tension.
 2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- B. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Thermoset-rubber base.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than **12 inches (300 mm)** long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than **12 inches (300 mm)** long.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than **10 linear feet (3 linear m)** for every **500 linear feet (150 linear m)** or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** or more than **90 deg F (32 deg C)**.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.2 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tarkett Basework 4" Toeless; insert product designation or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Flexco; Roppe Holding Company.
 - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 - 3. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Style A, Straight: .
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- D. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: Match Architect's sample Match Tarkett Baseworks 69 Sterling Silver.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
 - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than [3 inches (76 mm)] in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519.23 – Resilient / Vinyl Tile Flooring

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Resilient vinyl tile & plank flooring

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Manufacturer Certifications:
 - 1. Provide certification that accurately identifies the Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) of flooring furnished for this project including manufacturer's name, address and factory location.
 - a. Suppliers of Private-Label flooring for this project must identify themselves as such and fully disclose the OEM information listed above.
 - b. All "manufacturer" requirements in these specifications must be complied with by the OEM, including warranties, certifications, qualifications, product data, test results, environmental requirements, performance data, etc.
 - 2. Provide ISO 9001 certification for the OEM of the specified products.
 - 3. Provide ISO 14001 certification for the OEM of the specified products.
- C. Shop Drawings: Showing installation details and locations of borders, patterns, locations of any floor inserts and any seams.
- D. Samples:
 - 1. Manufacturer's color chart for selection of available floors
 - 2. Color samples:
 - a. Samples to be a minimum of 3" x 3"

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
 - 1. For a qualified resilient flooring Manufacturer.
 - 2. For a qualified resilient flooring Installer.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit three copies of the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer maintenance instructions.
 - 2. Manufacturer material warranty.
 - 3. Installer installation warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
 - 1. ISO 9001 Certified.
 - 2. ISO 14001 Certified.
 - 3. At least ten years active experience in the manufacture and marketing of commercial resilient flooring.
 - 4. A provider of authorized installer training.
- B. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. At least five years experience in the installation of resilient flooring.
 - 2. Experience on at least five projects of similar size, type and complexity as this project.
 - 3. Employer of workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for resilient flooring installation indicated.
- C. Fire Test Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648, Class 1, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store flooring and installation materials in protected dry spaces, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) nor more than 85 deg F (29 deg C).
- B. Store the indoor resilient surfacing rolls in an upright position on a smooth flat surface immediately upon delivery to Project.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Product Installation:

1. Maintain temperatures during installation within range recommended by manufacturer, in spaces to receive flooring one week before installation, during installation, and one week after installation.
 2. After installation, maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer
 3. Prohibit traffic during flooring installation and for at least 48 hours after flooring installation.
- B. Install flooring only after other finishing work, including painting and overhead work, has been completed.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Limited Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace flooring that fails within specified warranty period.
1. Material warranty must be direct from the product manufacturer.
 - a. Material warranties from separate or third party insurance providers are not valid.
 - b. Material warranties from private label distributors are not valid.
 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Material manufacturing defects.
 - b. Surface abrasion and deterioration to the point of wear-through where normal foot and wheeled traffic is occurring or where the material is being properly maintained.
 - c. Failure due to substrate moisture exposure not exceeding 95% relative humidity (RH) (when tested in accordance with ASTM F2170) or 8 pounds moisture vapor emission rate (MVER) (when tested in accordance with ASTM F1869).
 3. Warranty Period:
 - a. For materials: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For surface wear: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For moisture vapor tolerance: 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Limited Warranty: Installer's standard form in which installer agrees to repair or replace flooring that fails due to poor workmanship or faulty installation within the specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of flooring with other equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL RESILIENT / VINYL TILE FLOORING

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacture: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Gerflor Creation Living

Gerflor's Creation Living Luxury Vinyl Tile, a 2mm thick Luxury Vinyl Tile (LVT) product in plank or tile format with a printed design protected by a 12 mil thick transparent wearlayer and including the PUR+ Matte surface treatment for ease of maintenance.

- B. Substitution Limitations:

1. All other manufacturers: Submit formal substitution request prior to bid in accordance with Section 012500 - "Substitution Procedures".
2. Approval by Architect of other manufacturers does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to provide products which comply with all requirements of this specification.

- C. Product Description: Resilient / Vinyl Tile flooring as per ASTM F1700.

1. Overall Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.0 mm)
2. Wear-Layer Thickness: Not less than 0.012 inch (0.30 mm)
3. Adhesive Method: as recommended per Gerflor installation instructions to ensure proper installation and performance.
4. 100% REACH Compliant.
5. Applied Finish: Manufacturer's, factory-applied, permanent, laser and UV-cured.
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Gerflor PUR+ Matte
6. Color, Pattern, Size: Dependent on specific Creation design selected by customer from manufacturer's standard colors and patterns.
 - a. [Gerflor theflooringgroup, 7 ¼" x 48" Planks](#) selected from full range of colors.

- D. Performance Criteria:

1. ASTM F1700 for resilient / vinyl tile flooring
 - a. Provide technical data sheet to show ASTM F1700 classification and performance criteria
2. Must meet requirements of Static Load Limit ASTM F970 (250psi) or better
3. Must meet requirements of Residual Indentation ASTM F1914 or better

4. Must provide excellent results to ASTM F925 Chemical & Stain Resistance
5. Must meet Impact Insulation Class: ASTM E989 33dB
 - a. 60dB if used with Gerflor Smart Fix underlayment
6. Fire Performance: ASTM E 648; Class 1
7. Slab Moisture Design Tolerance:
 - a. Maximum relative humidity of 90 percent when tested according to ASTM F 2170.
 - b. Maximum moisture vapor emission rate of 8 pounds of water per 1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours when tested according to ASTM F1869.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compound: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation approved by the flooring manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by flooring manufacturer for substrate and conditions indicated.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Gerflor Gerfix TPS+ adhesive.
 - a. Coverage Type: Full-spread application.Or
 2. Basis-of-design Product: Gerflor Gerfix Spray adhesive.
 - a. Coverage Type: Full spray application

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify the Following:
 1. The area in which the indoor resilient tile flooring will be installed is dry, weather-tight and in compliance with specified requirements.
 2. Permanent heat, lighting and ventilation systems are installed and operable.
 3. Other work, including overhead work, that could cause damage, dirt, dust or otherwise interrupt installation has been completed or suspended.
 4. No foreign materials or objects are present on the substrate and that it is clean and ready for preparation and installation.
 5. Tests to verify that the moisture vapor emission rate or substrate relative humidity is within the specified ranges.
 6. The concrete slab surface pH level is within the specified range.

7. The concrete slab surface deviation is no greater than 3/16 inch within 10 feet (4.5 mm within 3 m) as described in AC1117R.
8. The concrete slab complies with ACI 302.2R for concrete design including use of a low-permeance vapor barrier directly beneath the concrete subfloor with sealed penetrations.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure proper adhesion of resilient flooring system.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of sealers, curing compounds and other additives. Remove coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Alkalinity Testing: Perform pH testing according to ASTM F 710. Proceed with installation only if pH readings range between 7 and 11.
- C. Moisture Testing: Perform ASTM F 2170 relative humidity test and proceed with installation only after it is confirmed that the concrete relative humidity does not exceed 95% RH. Or perform ASTM F 1869 calcium chloride test and proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 8 lb/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.

Where only one test protocol can be performed, ASTM F 2170 is preferred.

- D. Use trowelable concrete based leveling and patching compound with the same moisture vapor tolerance as the adhesive to fill depressions, holes, cracks, grooves or other irregularities in substrate.
- E. Place flooring and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours before installation. Install flooring materials only after they have reached the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
- F. Sand the surface of the concrete slab.
- G. Sweep and then vacuum substrates immediately before installation. After cleaning, examine substrate for moisture, alkaline salts, grit, dust or other contamination. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 VINYL TILE FLOORING INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 1. Comply with resilient tile flooring manufacturer's installation instructions.
 2. Take necessary precautions to minimize noise, odors, dust and inconvenience during installation.

3. Fit **Smart Fix underlayment** neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, equipment anchors, floor outlets, and other interruptions of floor surface.
 4. Extend **Smart Fix underlayment** into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Fit planks neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, equipment anchors floor outlets, and other interruptions of floor surface.
 6. Extend planks into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Lay out flooring per manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Adhered Flooring: **Attach Smart Fix underlayment** to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied or sprayed to substrate to comply with adhesive and flooring manufacturer instructions.
- D. Adhered Flooring: Attach planks to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied or sprayed to substrate to comply with adhesive and flooring manufacturer instructions.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations after completing resilient flooring installation:
1. Remove marks and blemishes from flooring surfaces.
 2. Sweep and then vacuum flooring.
 3. Damp-mop flooring to remove soiling.
- B. Protect flooring from abrasions, indentations, and other damage from subsequent operations and placement of equipment, during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099114 - EXTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Surface preparation and application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
 - a. Galvanized metal.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 2. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 3. Indicate VOC content.

- B. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- E. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Exterior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.

2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F** (**10 and 35 deg C**).
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than **5 deg F** (**3 deg C**) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 2. PPG Paints.
 3. Pratt & Lambert.
 4. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 5. Valspar Corporation (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain paint from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
 - 3. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting. Failure to do so will result in rejection of the paint finish.
- C. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protectionClean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer[.] but not less than the following:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- G. Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
 - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and remove sanding dust.
 - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in the Exterior Painting Schedule may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.

- f. Plastic conduit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
 - 1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
 - 2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Cement Board Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.3A or MPI EXT 3.3J:
 - a. Latex Prime Coat: Exterior, matching topcoat.
 - b. Alkali-Resistant Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
 - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - d. Semigloss Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
- B. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.1B:
 - a. Zinc-Rich Prime Coat: Primer, zinc rich, inorganic, MPI #19.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
 - c. Semigloss Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.

- C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
 1. Latex System MPI EXT 5.3A or MPI EXT 5.3H:
 - a. Cementitious Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, cementitious, MPI #26.
 - b. Water-Based Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
 - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - d. Semigloss Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

END OF SECTION 099114

SECTION 099124 - INTERIOR PAINTING (MPI STANDARDS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Interior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F** (**10 and 35 deg C**).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than **5 deg F** (**3 deg C**) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. PPG Paints.
 - 3. Pratt & Lambert.
 - 4. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 - 5. Valspar Corporation (The).

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

3. Plaster: 12 percent.
 - C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
 - D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
 - E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
 - F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting. Failure to remove hardware etc. will result in rejection of painted surfaces.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer[.]
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

I. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:

1. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Other items as directed by Architect.

2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry-Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry-film thickness.
 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 2. If test results show that dry-film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry-film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
 1. Latex Floor Enamel System, MPI INT 3.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Floor paint, latex, matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Floor paint, latex, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Floor paint, latex, low gloss (maximum MPI Gloss Level 3)[, **MPI #60**].
- B. Steel Substrates:
 1. Latex System, Alkyd Primer, MPI INT 5.1Q or, MPI INT 5.1QQ:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
 - b. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anticorrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
 - c. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
 - d. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.

- e. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.

C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Latex System, MPI INT 5.3A or, MPI INT 5.3J:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, cementitious, MPI #26.
- b. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
- c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
- d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.
- e. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
- f. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)[, **MPI #141**].

D. Gypsum Board and Plaster Substrates:

1. Latex over Latex Sealer System, MPI INT 9.2A:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior[, **MPI #50**].
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semigloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)[, **MPI #54**].

END OF SECTION 099124

SECTION 101100 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Glass markerboards.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, finishes, and accessories for visual display units.
 - 2. Include electrical characteristics for motorized units.
- B. Shop Drawings: For visual display units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.
 - 2. Show locations of panel joints. Show locations of field-assembled joints for factory-fabricated units too large to ship in one piece.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of visual display unit indicated, for units with factory-applied color finishes, and as follows:
 - 1. Samples of facings for each visual display panel type, indicating color and texture.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of visual display unit indicated.
 - 1. Visual Display Panel: Not less than 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), with facing, core, and backing indicated for final Work. Include one panel for each type, color, and texture required.
 - 2. Trim: 6-inch- (150-mm-) long sections of each trim profile.
 - 3. Display Rail: 6-inch- (150-mm-) long section of each type.
- E. Product Schedule: For visual display units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For visual display units to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver factory-fabricated visual display units completely assembled in one piece. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured unit size, or if unit size is impracticable to ship in one piece, provide two or more pieces with joints in locations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
 - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Life of the building.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 GLASS MARKERBOARDS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. [A-1 Visual Systems](#).
 - 2. [ADP Lemco](#).
 - 3. Delko.
- B. Glass Markerboards: Fabricated of 6-mm tempered or 6-mm tempered-laminated ultra-thin glass with steel backing for use with magnets.

1. Edge Treatment: Smooth polished edge with rounded corners.
 2. Frame: Aluminum trim in profile indicated.
 3. Surface: Glossy.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard adhesive or adhesive-foam tape mounting.
- D. Marker Tray: Aluminum, attached with stainless steel clips.
- E. Size: as shown on drawings.

2.3 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation of motorized, sliding visual display units.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for proper preparation and backing for visual display units.
- D. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth where sliding visual display units will be installed.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances, such as dirt, mold, and mildew, that could impair the performance of and affect the smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.
- C. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display units and wall surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Visual Display Board Assembly Mounting Heights: Install visual display units at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below.
 - 1. Mounting Height for Grades K through 3: 24 (610) inches (mm) above finished floor to top of chalktray.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean visual display units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one removable cleaning instructions label to visual display unit in each room.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Cover and protect visual display units after installation and cleaning.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motorized, sliding visual display units.

END OF SECTION 101100

SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Dimensional characters.
 - a. Cast dimensional characters.
 - b. Cutout dimensional characters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For signs.

1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, and layout for each sign at least half size.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.

1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Sample of each type of dimensional character.
2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
3. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in the Project.

E. Product Schedule: For dimensional letter signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cast Characters: Characters with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, and as follows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. A.R.K. Ramos.
 - b. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
 - c. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - d. Cosco.
 - e. Gemini Incorporated.
 - f. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.

- B. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 - 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 5. Internally brace dimensional characters for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners.
 - 6. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
 - 7. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Verify that electrical service is correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

B. Mounting Methods:

1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
2. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place spacers on studs, place sign in position with spacers pinched between sign and substrate, and install washers and nuts on stud ends projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 101423.13 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.
- B. Related Requirements:

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.
- B. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample.
 - 2. Variable Component Materials: Full-size Sample of each base material, character (letter, number, and graphic element) in each exposed color and finish not included in Samples above.
 - 3. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
 - 4. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in Project.
- E. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Variable Component Materials: 12 replaceable text inserts and interchangeable characters (letters, numbers, and graphic elements) of each type.
 - 2. Tools: One set(s) of specialty tools for assembling signs and replacing variable sign components.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.

- b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
 - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the ABA standards of the Federal agency having jurisdiction and ICC A117.1.

2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: per drawings with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Advance Corporation.
 - b. ASE, Inc.
 - c. Clarke Systems.
 - d. Mohawk Sign Systems.
 - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Aluminum-Sheet Sign: Anodized composite sign with applied letters and symbols.
 - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: **0.25 inch (6.35 mm)**.
 - b. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
 - a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
 - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.
4. Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with two-face tape.
5. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range] and. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

- B. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, 0.045 inch (1.14 mm) thick, with adhesive on both sides.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
1. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423.13

—
Section 102239 - Operable Partitions Acousti-Seal®

PART 1 – GENERAL**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Manually operated, paired panel operable partitions.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 03 Sections for concrete tolerances required.
 - 2. Division 05 Sections for primary structural support, including pre-punching of support members by structural steel supplier per operable partition supplier's template.
 - 3. Division 06 Sections for wood framing & supports, and all blocking at head and jambs as required.
 - 4. Division 09 Sections for wall and ceiling framing at head and jambs.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified in writing by the operable partition manufacturer, as qualified to install the manufacturer's partition systems for work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Acoustical Performance: Test operable partitions in an independent acoustical laboratory in accordance with ASTM E90 test procedure and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 to attain no less than the STC rating specified. Provide a complete and unedited written test report by the testing laboratory upon request.
- C. Preparation of the opening shall conform to the criteria set forth per ASTM E557 *Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions*.
- D. The operable wall must be manufactured by a certified ISO-9001-2015 company or an equivalent quality control system.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM International
 - 1. ASTM E557 Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions.
 - 2. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
 - 3. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass.
 - 4. ASTM C1048 - Heat-Treated Flat Glass—Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass.
 - 5. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
 - 6. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation
- B. Health Product Declaration Collaborative
 - 1. Health Product Declaration Open Standard v2.1
- C. International Standards Organization

1. ISO 14021 - Environmental Labels and Declarations - Self-Declared Environmental Claims (Type II Environmental Labeling).
 2. ISO 14025:2011-10, Environmental Labels and Declarations - Type III Environmental Declarations - Principles and Procedures.
 3. ISO 14040:2009-11, Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Principles and Framework.
 4. ISO 14044:2006-10, Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Requirements and Guidelines.
 5. ISO 21930 – Sustainability in Buildings and Civil Engineering Works — Core Rules for Environmental Product Declarations of Construction Products and Services.
- D. Other Standards
1. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act.
 2. ANSI Z97.1 - Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings.
 3. CPSC 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
 4. NEMA LD3 - High Pressure Decorative Laminates.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Material descriptions, construction details, finishes, installation details, and operating instructions for each type of operable partition, component, and accessory specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of operable partitions. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other construction, and accessories. Indicate dimensions, weights, conditions at openings, and at storage areas, and required installation, storage, and operating clearances. Indicate location and installation requirements for hardware and track, including floor tolerances required and direction of travel. Indicate blocking to be provided by others.
- C. Setting Drawings: Show imbedded items and cutouts required in other work, including support beam punching template.
- D. Samples: Color samples demonstrating full range of finishes available by architect. Verification samples will be available in same thickness and material indicated for the work.
- E. Reports: Provide a complete and unedited written sound test report indicating test specimen matches product as submitted.
- F. Create spaces that are healthy for occupants.
 1. Furnish products and materials with Health Product Declaration (HPD), Manufacturer Inventory, or other material health disclosure documentation. Products without an HPD or other disclosure documentation are not acceptable.
- G. Furnish materials that generate the least amount of pollution.
 1. Furnish products and materials that have third party verified environmental product declarations (EPD's). Consider products and materials that have optimized environmental performance (reduced life cycle impacts). Products without an EPD or other disclosure documentation are not acceptable.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Clearly mark packages and panels with numbering systems used on Shop Drawings. Do not use permanent markings on panels.
- B. Protect panels during delivery, storage, and handling to comply with manufacturer's direction and as required to prevent damage.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide written warranty by manufacturer of operable partitions agreeing to repair or replace any components with manufacturing defects.
- B. Warranty period: Two (2) years.
- C. Suspension System Warranty: Five (5) years.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS, PRODUCTS, AND OPERATION

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Modernfold, Inc; Acousti-Seal #932 manually operated paired panel operable partition. or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Advanced Equipment Corporation.
 - 2. Hufcor, Inc.
 - 3. KWIK-WALL Company.
 - 4. Moderco Inc.

2.2 OPERATION

- A. OP-01: Acousti-Seal #932: Series of paired flat panels hinged together in pairs, manually operated, top supported with operable floor seals.
- B. Final Closure:
 - 1. OP-01: Horizontally expanding panel edge with removable crank

2.3 PANEL CONSTRUCTION

- A. Nominal 3-inch (76mm) thick panels in manufacturer's standard 48-inch (1220mm) widths. All panel horizontal and vertical framing members fabricated from minimum 18-gage formed steel with overlapped and welded corners for rigidity. Top channel is reinforced to support suspension system components. Frame is designed so that full vertical edges of panels are of formed steel and provide concealed protection of the edges of the panel skin.
- B. Panel skin shall be:
 - 1. OP-01: 0.50-inch (13mm) NAUF medium density fiberboard, single material or composite layers continuously bonded to panel frame. Acoustical ratings of panels with this construction minimum:
 - a. 50 STC
- C. Hinges for Panels, Closure Panels, Pass Doors, and Pocket Doors shall be:
 - 1. OP-01: Full leaf butt hinges, attached directly to the panel frame with welded hinge anchor plates within panel to further support hinge mounting to frame. Lifetime warranty on hinges. Hinges mounted into panel edge or vertical astragal are not acceptable.
- D. Panel Trim: No vertical trim required or allowed on edges of panels; minimal groove appearance at panel joints.
- E. Panel Weights:
 - 1. OP-01: 50 STC - 8 lbs./square foot

2.4 PANEL FINISH

- A. Panel finish shall be:

1. OP-01: Reinforced vinyl with woven backing weighing not less than 21 ounces (595 grams) per lineal yard.
- B. Panel Trim: Exposed panel trim of one consistent color:
 1. OP-01: To Be Advised

2.5 SOUND SEALS

- A. Vertical Interlocking Sound Seals between panels: Roll-formed steel astragals, with reversible tongue and groove configuration in each panel edge for universal panel operation. Rigid plastic or aluminum astragals or astragals in only one panel edge are not acceptable.
- B. Horizontal Top Seals: Continuous contact extruded vinyl bulb shape with pairs of non-contacting vinyl fingers to prevent distortion without the need for mechanically operated parts.
- C. Horizontal bottom floor seals shall be:
 1. OP-01: Modernfold IA2 Bottom seal. Automatic operable seals providing nominal 2-inch (51mm) operating clearance with an operating range of +0.50-inch (13mm) to -1.50-inch (38mm) which automatically drop as panels are positioned, without the need for tools or cranks.

2.6 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. OP-01: #17 Suspension System
 1. Suspension Tracks: Minimum 11-gauge, 0.12-inch (3.04mm) roll-formed steel track, suitable for either direct mounting to a wood header or supported by adjustable steel hanger brackets, supporting the load-bearing surface of the track, connected to structural support by pairs of 0.38-inch (10mm) diameter threaded rods. Aluminum track is not acceptable.
 - a. Exposed track soffit: Steel, integral to track, and pre-painted off-white.
 2. Carriers: One all-steel trolley with steel tired ball bearing wheels per panel (except hinged panels). Non-steel tires are not acceptable.

2.7 OPTIONS

- A. Pass Doors:
- B. Single Pass Doors:
 1. OP-01: Matching pass door same thickness and appearance as the panels. ADA compliant pass door equipped with friction latch and flush pulls for panic operation. No threshold will be permitted.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM E557, operable partition manufacturer's written installation instructions, Drawings and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Install operable partitions and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting have been completed.
- C. Match operable partitions by installing panels from marked packages in numbered sequence indicated on Shop Drawings.
- D. Broken, cracked, chipped, deformed or unmatched panels are not acceptable.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean partition surfaces upon completing installation of operable partitions to remove dust, dirt, adhesives, and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to the manufacturer and Installer that ensure operable partitions are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operable partitions to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free from binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

3.4 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine flooring, structural support, and opening, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of operable partitions. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Demonstrate proper operation and maintenance procedures to Owner's representative.
- B. Provide Operation and Maintenance Manual to Owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 102239

SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Corner guards.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for metal protective trim units, according to BHMA A156.6, used for armor, kick, mop, and push plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.
 - 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Corner Guards: **12 inches (300 mm)** long. Include example top caps.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
 - 1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than **70 deg F (21 deg C)** during the period plastic materials are stored.
 - 2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
 - 3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of **70 deg F (21 deg C)**.

- a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products[**of each type**] from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.3 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Metal Corner Guards: Fabricated as one piece from formed or extruded metal with formed edges; with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [American Floor Products Company, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Babcock-Davis.](#)
 - c. [Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.](#)
 - d. [Construction Specialties, Inc.](#)
 2. Material: Stainless-steel sheet, Type 304.
 - a. Thickness: Minimum **0.0625 inch (1.6 mm)**.

- b. Finish: Directional satin, No. 4.
- 3. Mounting: Oval head, countersunk screws through factory-drilled mounting holes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 102600

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Public-use shower room accessories.
3. Childcare accessories.
4. Underlavatory guards.
5. Custodial accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for ceramic toilet and bath accessories.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.

B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist **250 lbf (1112 N)** concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc. (ASI).
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
 - d. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - 2. Description: Double-roll dispenser Double-roll dispenser with shelf.
 - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 4. Operation: Noncontrol delivery with standard spindle.
 - 5. Capacity: Designed for **4-1/2- or 5-inch- (114- or 127-mm-)** diameter tissue rolls.
 - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- C. Combination Towel (Folded) Dispenser/Waste Receptacle:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc; B-43944 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc. (ASI).

- b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 2. Description: Combination unit for dispensing C-fold or multifold towels, with removable waste receptacle.
 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - a. Designed for nominal **4-inch (100-mm)** wall depth.
 4. Minimum Towel-Dispenser Capacity: 600 C-fold or 800 multifold paper towels.
 5. Minimum Waste-Receptacle Capacity: **15gal. (45 L)**.
 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 7. Liner: Reusable, vinyl waste-receptacle liner.
 - D. Soap Dispenser:
 1. [Basis-of-Design Product](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#); B-4112 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 2. Description: Designed for manual operation and dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
 3. Mounting: Vertically oriented, surface mounted.
 4. Capacity: : 40-fl oz (1.2-L).
 5. Materials: Stainless steel.
 6. Refill Indicator: Window type.
 - E. Grab Bar:
 1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#).
 - c. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - d. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 2. Mounting: Flanges with [concealed] fasteners.
 3. Material: Stainless steel, **0.05 inch (1.3 mm)** thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
 4. Outside Diameter: **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**.
 5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
 - F. Sanitary-Napkin and Tampon Vendor:
 1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - d. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
2. Mounting: Fully recessed, designed for 4-inch (100-mm) wall depth .
 3. Capacity: 30 tampons, 20 napkins.
 4. Operation: No coin (free).
 5. Exposed Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 6. Lockset: Tumbler type with separate lock and key for coin box.
- G. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#); B-37063C or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 2. Mounting: Recessed.
 3. Door or Cover: Self-closing, disposal-opening cover.
 4. Receptacle: Removable.
 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- H. Seat-Cover Dispenser:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#); B4221 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 3. Minimum Capacity: 250 seat covers.
 4. Exposed Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- I. Purse Shelf:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#); B-295 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 2. Description: Fixed rectangular unit.
 3. Nominal Size: 15 inches (381 mm) long by 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) wide.
 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- J. Mirror Unit:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#); B-290 or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
2. Frame: Stainless steel angle, **0.05 inch (1.3 mm)** thick.
- a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Size: As indicated on Drawings.
4. Shelf:
- a. Type: Integral, welded.
 - b. Depth: **5 inches (127 mm)**.
5. Hangers: Manufacturer's standard rigid, tamper and theft resistant.

K. Hook:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc](#); B670 B6707 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
2. Description: Single-prong unit <**Insert description**>.
3. Mounting: Concealed.
4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

2.3 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain childcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Diaper-Changing Station:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Koala Kare Products; a Division of Bobrick](#); <**product name or designation**> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\)](#).
 - b. [Bradley Corporation](#).
 - c. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick](#).
 - d. [SafeStrap Company, Inc. \(SSC, Inc.\)](#).
 - e. [Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.](#)
2. Description: Horizontal unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.
 - a. Engineered to support minimum of [**250-lb (113-kg)**] <**Insert value**> static load when opened.

3. Mounting: Surface mounted, with unit projecting not more than **4 inches (102 mm)** from wall when closed.
4. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
5. Material and Finish: HDPE in manufacturer's standard color.
6. Liner Dispenser: Provide built-in dispenser for disposable sanitary liners.

2.4 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

A. Underlavatory Guard:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Buckaroos, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Truebro by IPS Corporation.](#)
2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.5 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain custodial accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [American Specialties, Inc. \(ASI\).](#)
 - b. [Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Bradley Corporation.](#)
 - d. [GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.](#)
2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
3. Length: **36 inches (914 mm)**.
4. Hooks: Four.
5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal **0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick stainless steel.
 - b. Rod: Approximately **1/4-inch- (6-mm-)** diameter stainless steel.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, **0.031-inch- (0.8-mm-)** minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), **0.036-inch- (0.9-mm-)** minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with **G60 (Z180)** hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
 - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.
- C. Shower Seats: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples **6 by 6 inches (150 by 150 mm)** square.

F. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Babcock-Davis.](#)
 - b. [Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Larsens Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - d. [Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.](#)
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: **2-1/2-inch (64-mm)** backbend depth.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Aluminum sheet.
- F. Door Material: Aluminum sheet.
- G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.
- H. Door Glazing: Clear float glass.
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard.

2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim,, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
 - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
 - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Aluminum: **ASTM B221** (**ASTM B221M**) for extruded shapes and aluminum sheet, with strength and durability characteristics of not less than Alloy 6063-T5 for aluminum sheet.
 - a. Finish: Clear anodic.
3. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, **[3]** **[6]** mm thick.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
 3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 4. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
 2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at height indicated below: or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinet Mounting Height: **42 inches (1067 mm)** above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
 - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
 - a. Install cabinet with not more than **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** tolerance between pipe OD and knockout OD. Center pipe within knockout.
 - b. Seal through penetrations with firestopping sealant as specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- C. Identification:
 - 1. Apply decals at locations indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Babcock-Davis.](#)
 - b. [Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Kidde; Carrier Global Corporation.](#)
 - d. [Larsens Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - e. [Pyro-Chem; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.](#)
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis.
 - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - c. Kidde; Carrier Global Corporation.
 - d. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Pyro-Chem; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
 - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
 - a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches (1067 mm) above finished floor.

- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Manually operated roller shades with single rollers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.
 - 2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing the perimeters of installation accessories for light-blocking shades with a sealant.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.

- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **10 inches (250 mm)** long.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.

- 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.

- 1. Shadeband Material: Not less than **10 inches (250 mm)** square. Mark interior face of material if applicable.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.

- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Roller Shades: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, and shadeband material indicated, but no fewer than two units.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Hunter Douglas Contract; Litterise or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Draper Inc.
 2. Levolor.
 3. MechoShade Systems, Inc.
- B. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Litterise - Non Chain or crank required. Shade is operated by lifting or pull on bottom bare
- C. Provide one pul hook and pole per shade.
- D. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
1. Roller Drive-End Location: As indicated on Drawings or during shp drawing review.
 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- E. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- F. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
- G. Shadebands:
1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
 2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.
 - b. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Installation Accessories:
1. Exposed Headbox: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure including front fascia, top and back covers, endcaps, and removable bottom closure.
 - a. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than **4 inches (102 mm)**.
 2. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
 - 1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
 - 2. Type: Woven polyester and PVC-coated polyester.
 - 3. Weave: Mesh.
 - 4. Orientation on Shadeband: Up the bolt.
 - 5. Openness Factor: 10 percent.
 - 6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at **74 deg F (23 deg C)**:
 - 1. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible, except as follows:
 - 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.
 - 2. Skylight Shades: Provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband as required to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion or sag of material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: At exterior windows.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 123661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid surface material countertops.
- 2. Solid surface material apron fronts.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 064116 "Plastic-Laminate-Faced Architectural Cabinets" for reception desk and break room cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.

- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

- 1. Show locations and details of joints.
- 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

- 1. Countertop material, 6 inches (150 mm) square.
- 2. One full-size solid surface material countertop, with front edge, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), of construction and in configuration specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company; Corian Solid Surface “Deep Storm” or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Avonite Surfaces.
 - b. Formica Corporation.
 - c. Wilsonart LLC.
 - 2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
 - 3. Integral Sink Bowls: Comply with CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.
 - 4. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
 - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
 - 2. End Splash: None.
- C. Countertops: **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Countertops: **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** thick, solid surface material laminated to **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** thick particleboard with exposed edges built up with **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** thick, solid surface material.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
 - 2. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
 - 1. Joint Locations: Not within **18 inches (450 mm)** of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than **36 inches (900 mm)** long would result, unless unavoidable.
 - 2. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.
- H. Cutouts and Holes:
 - 1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting **3/16 inch (5 mm)** into fixture opening.
 - 2. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

3. Counter-Mounted Cooktops: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for cooktops. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m)**, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** maximum. Do not exceed **1/64-inch (0.4-mm)** difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- D. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- E. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.

- F. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- H. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.16

BLANK PAGES

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Grout.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level.
 - 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.

- d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
3. Thermowells.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product certificates.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-Standard: ASME B40.200.

- ##### A. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) nominal diameter.
- ##### B. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- ##### C. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- ##### D. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- ##### E. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
- ##### F. Window: Plain glass or plastic.

- G. Ring: Stainless steel.
- H. Element: Bimetal coil.
- I. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- J. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- B. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Plastic; 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 2. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 8. Window: Glass or plastic.
 9. Ring: Brass.
 10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 METERING

- A. Meters capable of the following:
1. Recording daily water consumption.
 2. Communicating data remotely.

3. Electronic data storage for five years.
 4. Reports showing daily, monthly, and annual water consumption.
 5. Alarming capability in accordance with Water User Efficiency Plan for Operation.
- B. Meter potable and reclaimed water sources to the building and onsite non-potable water sources individually.
- C. Submeter the following:
1. Automatically controlled irrigation systems.
 2. Tenant spaces.
 3. Makeup-water lines to onsite water collection systems.
 4. Makeup-water lines to ornamental water features.
 5. Makeup-water lines to indoor and outdoor pools.
 6. Makeup-water lines to and blowdown lines from cooling towers.
 7. Makeup-water lines to steam boilers.
 8. Makeup-water lines to evaporative coolers.
 9. Makeup-water lines to open-loop fluid coolers.
 10. Makeup-water lines to open-loop chillers.
 11. Makeup-water lines to closed-loop systems.
 12. Roof spray systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

- J. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.

- K. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

- L. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

- M. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.2 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.3 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.

3.4 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze ball valves.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
 - 1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - 2. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.
 - 2. Throttling Service: Ball valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 - 2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe positioning systems.
6. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Equipment supports.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
 - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
 - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: aluminum, **0.032-inch** minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.
5. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch** thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to **160 deg F**.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.

6. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on **8-1/2-by-11-inch** bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch** thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to **160 deg F**.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch**.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** for viewing distances up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.
- J. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.

2. High-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
3. Domestic Water Piping
 - a. Background: Safety green.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Safety black.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 3. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 4. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 5. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 6. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.

3. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 4. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White Color-code jackets based on university system. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - c. Tee covers.
 - d. Flange and union covers.
 - e. End caps.
 - f. Beveled collars.
 - g. Valve covers.
 - h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation,

- install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
- 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
- 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
- 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular

- surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER PREFORMED PIPE INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.10 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water piping up to 1-1/4": Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Polyolefin: 1-1/2 inch thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water piping greater than 1-1/4": Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.
 3. Polyolefin: 2 inch thick.
- C. Domestic Cold Water piping up to 1-1/4": Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
 3. Polyolefin: 3/4 inch thick.
- D. Domestic Cold Water piping greater than 1-1/4": Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 3. Polyolefin: 1-1/2 inch thick.
- E. Roof Drain Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 3. Polyolefin: 1-1/2 inch thick.
- F. Piping Exposed to Ambient Conditions: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 3 inch thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inch thick.
 3. Polyolefin: 3 inch thick.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
1. White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.

3.15 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

3.16 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified by architect.
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

- C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the manufacturer.
 - 1. Store PEX tubing in cartons or under cover to avoid dirt or foreign material from entering the tubing.
 - 2. Do not expose PEX tubing to direct sunlight for more than 30 days. If construction delays are encountered, cover the tubing to prevent exposure to direct sunlight

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- C. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- D. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123.
 - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- E. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- F. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
 - b. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

2.3 CPVC PIPING

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40.
 - 1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40.
 - 2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F 437, Schedule 80.
- B. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.
- C. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.

2.4 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing. Fittings in "Fittings for PEX Tube" Paragraph below are available in NPS 3/8 to NPS 1 (DN 10 to DN 25).
- B. PEX Fittings: elbows, adapters, couplings, plugs, tees and multi-port tees (1/2 inch through 3 inch nominal pipe size): ASTM F1960 cold-expansion fitting manufactured from the following material types:
 - 1. UNS No. C69300 Lead-free (LF) Brass.
 - 2. 20% glass-filled polysulfone as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 - 3. Unreinforced polysulfone (group 01, class 1, grade 2) as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 - 4. Polyphenylsulfone (group 03, class 1, grade 2) as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 - 5. Blend of polyphenylsulfone (55-80%) and unreinforced polysulfone (rem.) as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 - 6. Reinforcing cold-expansion rings shall be manufactured from the same source as PEX piping manufacturer and marked "F1960".
- C. Pre-Insulated Piping (1/2 inch (16mm) through 2 inch (50mm) nominal pipe size): PEX piping, with a closed-cell polyethylene foam insulation.
- D. Multi-Port Tees: Multiple-outlet fitting complying with ASTM F 877 (CAN/CSA B137.5); with ASTM F 1960 inlets and outlets.
 - 1. Engineered polymer branch multi-port tee.
 - 2. Engineered polymer flow-through multi-port tee.
 - 3. Engineered polymer commercial branch multi-port tee.
 - 4. Engineered polymer commercial branch multi-port elbow.
 - 5. Engineered polymer commercial flow-through multi-port tee.
- E. Manifolds: Multiple-outlet assembly complying with ASTM F 877 (CAN/CSA B137.5); with ASTM F 1960 outlets.
 - 1. Engineered polymer valved manifold.
 - 2. Engineered polymer valveless manifold.
 - 3. Lead - free copper branch manifold.
 - 4. Lead-free copper valved manifold.
- F. PEX-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Provide fittings from the same manufacturer of the piping.

2. Threaded Brass to PEX Transition: one-piece brass fitting with male or female threaded adapter and ASTM F 1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX reinforcing cold-expansion ring.
 3. Brass Sweat to PEX Transition: one-piece brass fitting with sweat adapter and ASTM F 1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX reinforcing cold-expansion ring.
 4. PEX to Flange Transition: two-piece brass fitting with lead-free ProPEX adapter and steel flange conforming to ASME B 16.5.
- G. PEX-to-Thermoplastic Transition Fittings: CPVC to PEX Transition: Thermoplastic fitting with one spigot or socket end and one ASTM F 1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX reinforcing cold-expansion ring.
- H. VALVES
1. PEX-to-PEX, Lead Free (LF) Brass Ball Valves (1/2 inch (16 mm) through 2 inch (50 mm) nominal pipe size)
 - a. Manufacturers: Provide ball valve(s) from the same manufacturer as the piping system.
 - b. Full-port ball valve: two-piece, ASTM F1960 cold-expansion ends, with PEX reinforcing cold-expansion ring.
 - c. LF brass valve with a positive stop shoulder manufactured from C69300 brass.
 - d. In compliance with: 250 CWP, ANSI/NSF 359, ANSI/NSF 14/61, cNSF-us-pw_G lead free 0.25% Lead max., ASTM F1960, ASTM F 877 (CAN/CSA B137.5).

2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.'

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.](#)
 - b. [Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.](#)
 - c. [Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. \(The\).](#)
 - d. [JCM Industries.](#)
 - e. [Romac Industries, Inc.](#)
 - f. [Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.](#)
 - g. [Viking Johnson.](#)

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.](#)
 - b. [Central Plastics Company.](#)
 - c. [Hart Industries International, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Jomar International.](#)
 - e. [Matco-Norca.](#)
 - f. [McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.](#)
 - g. [Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
 - h. [Wilkins; a Zurn company.](#)
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig at 180 deg F.
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. 175 psig minimum 150 psig Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Elster Perfection Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
 - c. [Matco-Norca.](#)
 - d. [Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Victaulic Company.](#)
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- C. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- D. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- F. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- G. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- H. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- I. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- K. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- L. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- M. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for Hydronic Piping."
- N. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- O. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for Hydronic Piping."
- P. PEX Piping Installation:
 - 1. Install PEX Pipe Support, arms and offsets in compliance with Chapter 5 - "System Design and Layout" in the Uponor Plumbing Design Assistance Manual (PDAM).
 - 2. PEX shall not be installed in areas within five feet of UV light.
 - 3. Install piping in compliance with manufacturer's Plumbing Installation Guide.
- Q. Use of CPVC pipe will require additional expansion loops than that shown on the plans. See chart at the end of the piping schedule for sizing of loops.

3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- F. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.3 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. NPS 1-1/2NPS 2Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.4 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.

3.5 NPS 2-1/2 to NPS HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Rigid Piping Runs:
 - a. Horizontal runs 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
 - 3. Flexible Piping Runs
 - a. Flexible Horizontal Piping Runs: Install CTS hangers suitable for PEX piping in compliance with Chapter 6 - "Installation Methods" of the Uponor Plumbing Design Assistance Manual (PDAM) and local codes, with the following maximum spacing:
 - 1) For IPC Jurisdictions: 3 inch (75mm) and below: Maximum span, 32 inches
 - 2) The above maximum hanger spacing requirements may be extended with the use of a continuous support channel such as Uponor PEX Pipe Support.
 - b. Horizontal PEX Piping with PEX Pipe Channel: Install hangers for PEX-a piping with horizontal support channel in accordance with local jurisdiction and manufacturer's recommendations, with the following maximum spacing:
 - 1) 3/4 inch (20 mm) and below: Maximum span, 6 feet (1828 mm).
 - 2) 1 inch (25 mm) and above: Maximum span, 8 feet (2438 mm).
 - c. Vertical PEX Piping: Support PEX piping with maximum spacing of 5 feet (1524 mm).
 - d. PEX Riser Supports: Install CTS riser clamps at the base of each floor and at the top of every other floor for domestic hot-water systems. Install mid-story guides between each floor. Install CTS riser clamps at the base of each floor and at the top of every fourth floor for domestic cold-water systems. Install mid-story guides.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
- F. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3: 108 inches; NPS 3 to NPS 5: 110 inches; NPS 5 to NPS 8: 120 inches; NPS 8 to NPS 12: 144 inches. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 - 4. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 - 5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 - 6. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches (1500 mm) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller, and every 72 inches (1800 mm) for NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 230553 "Identification for Mechanical Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for re-inspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Do not expose PEX piping to direct sunlight for more than 30 days. If construction delays are encountered, provide cover to portions of piping exposed to direct sunlight.

3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

- e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

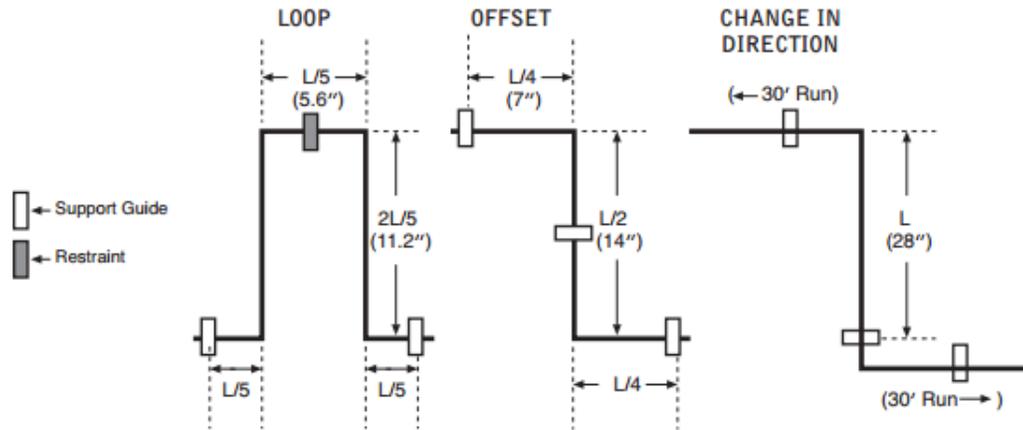
3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 3/4 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40.
 - a. Use of CPVC pipe will require additional expansion loops than that shown on the plans. See chart below for sizing of loops:
 - 3. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing
- D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 1 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40.
 - a. Use of CPVC pipe will require additional expansion loops than that shown on the plans. See chart below for sizing of loops:

**Expansion Loop Length (L), inches
for
100°F Temperature Change
Length of Run in Feet**

Nominal Dia., In.	20'	40'	60'	80'	100'
1/2	16	23	28	32	36
3/4	19	29	33	38	43
1	22	31	38	44	49
1 1/4	24	34	42	48	54
1 1/2	26	37	45	52	59
2	30	42	52	60	67

Example: Tubing Size = 1/2" Length of run = 60' L = 28" (from table)



3.12 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. NPS 2/NPS 2-1/2 Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 3. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose stations.
9. Hose bibbs.
10. Wall hydrants.
11. Ground hydrants.
12. Post hydrants.
13. Drain valves.
14. Water-hammer arresters.
15. Air vents.
16. Trap-seal primer valves.
17. Trap-seal primer systems.
18. Specialty valves.
19. Flexible connectors.
20. Water meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.

- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.

- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers :

1. Standard: ASSE 1020.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

- D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1035.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 matching faucet size.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Finish: Chrome plated.

E. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers :

1. Standard: ASSE 1056.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1012.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Body: Bronze.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Standard: ASSE 1015.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

D. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:

1. Standard: ASSE 1022.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.

3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 4. Body: Stainless steel.
 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- E. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1024.
 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 3. Body: Bronze with union inlet.
- F. Carbonated-Beverage-Dispenser, Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1032.
 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 4. Body: Stainless steel.
 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- G. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection, Backflow-Preventer Assemblies:
1. Standard: ASSE 1047 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
 4. Body: Stainless steel.
 5. End Connections: Flanged.
 6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
 7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
 - c. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- H. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1048 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
 4. Body: Stainless steel.
 5. End Connections: Flanged.
 6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
 7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- I. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:
1. Standard: ASSE 1052.

2. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
3. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
4. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

J. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits :

1. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators :

1. Standard: ASSE 1003.
2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
3. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
4. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

B. Water-Control Valves :

1. Description: Pilot-operated, diaphragm-type, single-seated, main water-control valve.
2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
3. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
 - a. Pattern: Globe-valve design.
 - b. Trim: Stainless steel.
4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Type: Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
2. Body: Brass or bronze.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves :

1. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
2. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.

C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves :

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Port: Standard or full port.
6. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
7. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
8. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
9. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices :

1. Standard: ASSE 1017.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
3. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
6. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
7. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 F

B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
 - d. Powers.
 - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 F
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 145 gpm

C. Manifold, Thermostatic, Water Mixing-Valve Assemblies:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing-valve assembly in three-valve parallel arrangement.
2. Large-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic, water mixing valve and downstream-pressure regulator with pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
3. Intermediate-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic, water mixing valve and downstream-pressure regulator with pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
4. Small-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic, water mixing valve.
5. Thermostatic Mixing Valves: Comply with ASSE 1017. Include check stops on hot- and cold-water inlets and shutoff valve on outlet.
6. Water Regulator(s): Comply with ASSE 1003. Include pressure gage on inlet and outlet.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
4. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
5. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
7. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 F

E. Primary Water Tempering Valves:

1. Standard: ASSE 1017, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve, listed as tempering valve.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Temperature Control: Manual.
5. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.062 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.125 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.9 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes :

1. Mounting: Recessed.
2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
3. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
4. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
5. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
6. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
7. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. Mounting: Recessed.
2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
4. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.10 HOSE STATIONS

A. Single-Temperature-Water Hose Stations:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1.
2. Cabinet: Stainless-steel enclosure with exposed valve handle, hose connection, and hose rack. Include thermometer in front.
3. Hose-Rack Material: Stainless steel.
4. Body Material: Bronze.
5. Body Finish: Rough bronze.
6. Mounting: Wall, with reinforcement.
7. Supply Fittings: NPS 3/4 gate, globe, or ball valve and check valve and NPS 3/4 copper, water tubing. Omit check valve if check stop is included with fitting.
8. Hose: Manufacturer's standard, for service fluid, temperature, and pressure; 50 feet long.
9. Nozzle: With hand-squeeze, on-off control.
10. Vacuum Breaker:
 - a. Integral or factory-installed, nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

B. Hot- and Cold-Water Hose Stations:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1.
2. Faucet Type: Blending valve.
3. Cabinet: Stainless-steel enclosure with exposed valve handles, hose connection, and hose rack. Include thermometer in front.
4. Hose-Rack Material: Stainless steel.
5. Body Material: Bronze.
6. Body Finish: Rough bronze.
7. Mounting: Wall, with reinforcement.
8. Supply Fittings: Two NPS 3/4 gate, globe, or ball valves and check valves and NPS 3/4 copper, water tubing. Omit check valves if check stops are included with fitting.
9. Hose: Manufacturer's standard, for service fluid, temperature, and pressure; 50 feet long.
10. Nozzle: With hand-squeeze, on-off control.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or factory-installed, nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

2.11 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs :

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.](#)
 - b. [Josam Company.](#)
 - c. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
 - e. [Woodford Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - f. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
5. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
6. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
8. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
9. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.12 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

B. Nonfreeze, Hot- and Cold-Water Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rods: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamps.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.

9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Vacuum Breaker:
 - a. Nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
11. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

C. Moderate-Climate Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Watts: a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
6. Outlet:
 - a. Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
9. Outlet:
 - a. Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

D. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.

- b. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
 - c. [Woodford Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - d. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
 3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
 4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
 5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 6. Operation: Loose key.
 7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
 8. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
 9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

2.13 GROUND HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Ground Hydrants <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.](#)
 - b. [Josam Company.](#)
 - c. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
 - e. [Woodford Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - f. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
3. Type: Nonfreeze, concealed-outlet ground hydrant with box.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
7. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
9. Box: Deep pattern with cover.
10. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Key(s): Two with each ground hydrant.
12. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1011.

2.14 POST HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
 - d. [Woodford Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - e. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
 3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
 4. Operation: Loose key.
 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
 6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
 7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
 10. Vacuum Breaker:
 - a. Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
 11. Operating Key(s): Two with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.
- B. Nonfreeze, Nondraining-Type Post Hydrants:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
 - d. [Woodford Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - e. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
 2. Operation: Lever-piston operating mechanism and nondraining water-storage reservoir, designed without drain.
 3. Length: As required for burial of valve below frost line.
 4. Inlet: NPS 1 threaded.
 5. Outlet:
 - a. NPS 1 (DN 25) outlet and coupling plug for 1-inch (25-mm) hose.
 - b. NPS 1 by NPS 3/4 (DN 25 by DN 20) adapter with nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
 - c. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
 - d. NPS 1 by NPS 3/4 (DN 25 by DN 20) adapter with nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - e. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

C. Freeze-Resistant Sanitary Yard Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1057, Type 5 for nondraining hydrants.
3. Operation: Wheel handle.
4. Head: Copper alloy, with pail hook.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4-inch (DN 20) threaded inlet and inlet nozzle, galvanized-steel riser, and venturi.
6. Canister: Zinc-plated steel with atmospheric-vent device.
7. Vacuum Breaker:
 - a. Removable hose-connection backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
 - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet for field installation.

2.15 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.

2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 (DN 6) side outlet with cap.

2.16 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters :

1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
2. Type: Metal bellows or Copper tube with piston.
3. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.17 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.18 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Standard: ASSE 1018.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
5. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum, trap makeup connection.
2. Size: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum.
3. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

2.19 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS

A. Trap-Seal Primer Systems :

1. Standard: ASSE 1044.
2. Piping: NPS 3/4, ASTM B 88, Type L (DN 20, ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper, water tubing.
3. Cabinet: Recessed-mounted steel box with stainless-steel cover.
4. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120-V ac power.
 - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.
6. Number Outlets: Eight.
7. Size Outlets: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).

2.20 SPECIALTY VALVES

- ### A.
- Comply with requirements for general-duty metal valves in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

2.21 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- ### A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- ### B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.22 WATER METERS

A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C700.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
- c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
- d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
- e. Case: Bronze.
- f. End Connections: Threaded.

B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C701.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
- c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
- d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
- e. Case: Bronze.
- f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
- g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

C. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C702.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
- c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
- d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
- e. Case: Bronze.
- f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.

D. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

E. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve and pump.
- B. Install air vents at high points of water piping.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps" for booster systems.
 - 2. Section 332100 "Water Supply Wells" for well pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, without amendments, Section 7 - "Service Water Heating."

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - 2. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
 - 3. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
 - 4. TACO Incorporated.
 - 5. WILO USA LLC - WILO Canada Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
 - 2. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
 - 3. Impeller: Plastic.
 - 4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Capacities and Characteristics: See Drawings
 - 1. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
 - 2. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.

3. Electrical Characteristics:

- a. Volts: 120.
- b. Phases: Single.
- c. Hertz: 60.

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump with time clock. Run time 1 hour before and after occupied schedule

1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
5. Transformer: Provide if required.
6. Settings (110 Degree Recirc Pump): Start pump at 105 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.
7. Settings (165 Degree Recirc Pump): Start pump at 155 deg F and stop pump at 160 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
- D. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.

- E. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support pump weight.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- F. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 1. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Connect [pressure switches,] [thermostats,] [time-delay relays,] [and] [timers] to pumps that they control.
- F. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform] [Perform] startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Set thermostats, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 7. Start motor.
 - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

B. Related Section:

1. Section 221313 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASME A112.3.1, drainage pattern with socket and spigot ends.
- B. Internal Sealing Rings: Elastomeric gaskets shaped to fit socket groove.

2.5 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
- C. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- D. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.

- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.

2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.7 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.8 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 - 3. Unshielded, Non-pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.

- b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Non-pressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Provide a minimum of 6" sand bedding below all below grade piping. Provide backfill free of boulders larger than two (2") inches. Compact and test all backfill according to astm compaction standards or provide pea gravel backfill.
- C. Provide a minimum trench width of not less than 1.5 times the pipe outside diameter plus 12 inches for all below grade piping.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- I. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for all piping.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- M. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- N. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- O. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, non-pressure transition couplings.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 - 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 2 (DN 50): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 3. NPS 4 (DN 100): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 4. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet (3 m).
- J. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
- L. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- N. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.

4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Do not expose ABS or PVC piping to direct sunlight for more than 30 days. If construction delays are encountered, provide cover to portions of piping exposed to direct sunlight.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed ABS and PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - a. When used in plenum returns piping to be completely enclosed in insulation that meets the flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50.
 5. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - a. When used in plenum returns piping to be completely enclosed in insulation that meets the flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50.
- C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
4. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backwater valves.
2. Cleanouts.
3. Floor drains.
4. Trench drains.
5. Channel drainage systems.
6. Air-admittance valves.
7. Roof flashing assemblies.
8. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
9. Flashing materials.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for grease interceptors.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:

1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body: Cast iron.
4. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
5. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
6. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.

7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
2. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
4. Inlet: Threaded.
5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Type: Adjustable housing.
4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
7. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
11. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
4. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains (FD)

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
6. Top Shape: Square
7. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 6”
8. Trap Features: Provide with trap guard.

2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
4. Flange: Anchor.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Grate Material: Ductile iron or gray iron.
8. Grate Finish: Painted.
9. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.

10. Trap Material: Cast iron.
11. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

2.5 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems :

1. ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems:
2. Non-ASME A112.3.1, Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems:
3. Type: Modular system of stainless-steel channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.3.1, for trench drains.
 - b. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, stainless-steel with level invert.
 - c. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels.
 - 1) Material: Stainless steel.
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - d. Covers: Solid stainless steel, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels, and of lengths indicated.
 - e. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - f. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
4. Type: Modular system of stainless-steel channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, stainless steel with level invert.
 - b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels.
 - 1) Material: Stainless steel.
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - c. Covers: Solid stainless steel, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels, and of lengths indicated.
 - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

- e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
- B. Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
- 1. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
 - 2. Narrow, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
 - 3. Wide, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
 - 4. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
 - 1) Dimensions: 4-inch inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
 - b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
 - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
 - f. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 outlets in number and locations indicated.
 - 1) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
 - g. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - h. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
 - i. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - j. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

- k. Channel Sections: Wide, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include flat or rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
- l. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
- m. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
- n. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- o. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

2.6 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

- 1. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
 - a. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Stack Flashing Fittings:

- 1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
- 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

B. Vent Caps:

- 1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
- 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.8 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

- 1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
- 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.

3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- B. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- C. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- E. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.

- c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
 - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- G. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets.
- I. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
 - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- M. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
 - 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
 - 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
 - 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- N. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each grease interceptor.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to

identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

B. Related Section:

1. Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for storm drainage piping outside the building.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Storm drainage piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper fittings or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Non-pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Non-pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- I. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for all piping.
 - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- M. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- N. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

- O. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasketed joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hub-less-piping coupling joints.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828 procedure. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- E. Plastic, Non-pressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
 - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, non-pressure transition couplings.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 6. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

- H. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- J. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches.
- L. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
 - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for re-inspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 8 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

2. Hub-less, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hub-less-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hub-less, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hub-less-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION 221413

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof drains.
 - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 3. Cleanouts.
 - 4. Backwater valves.
 - 5. Trench drains.
 - 6. Channel drainage systems.
 - 7. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 8. Flashing materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, General-Purpose Roof Drains :
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.

- d. [Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.](#)
 - e. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
 3. Body Material: Cast iron.
 4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch diameter.
 5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
 6. Outlet: Bottom.
 7. Extension Collars: Required.
 8. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
 9. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
 10. Dome Material: Aluminum.
 11. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel.
 12. Water Dam: 2 inches high.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Downspout Adaptors:

1. Description: Manufactured, gray-iron casting, for attaching to horizontal-outlet, parapet roof drain and to exterior, sheet metal downspout.
2. Size: Inlet size to match parapet drain outlet.

B. Downspout Boots:

1. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
2. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 outlet.

C. Conductor Nozzles:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. Floor Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule cleanouts.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Type: Cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule.
4. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
7. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.

9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Stainless steel.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
11. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

B. Test Tees <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head, brass.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

C. Wall Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or Hub-less, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, drilled-and-threaded brass plug.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.4 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:

1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
5. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hub-less.
6. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
2. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
4. Inlet: Threaded.
5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

C. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves:

1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body Material: ABS or PVC.
4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
6. End Connections: Socket type.

2.5 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, for trench drains.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Flange: Anchor with weep holes.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Grate Material: Ductile iron.
7. Grate Finish: Painted.
8. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.

2.6 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
2. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
3. Size: Same as connected pipe.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hub-less-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.7 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft..
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
 - 3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- C. Install downspout boots at grade with top 18 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.
- D. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 - 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

- F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- H. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- I. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
- J. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- K. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- L. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- N. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
- O. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
 - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, atmospheric, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Commercial, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
3. Commercial, Gas-Fired, High-Efficiency, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
4. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7, "Service Water Heating."

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

B. Product certificates.

C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Source quality-control reports.

- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two year(s).
 - b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Atmospheric, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Bradford White Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Lochinvar, LLC.](#)
 - c. [Rheem Manufacturing Company.](#)
 - d. [Smith, A. O. Corporation.](#)
 - e. [State Industries.](#)
 - f. PVI
 - g. HTP
2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner: For use with atmospheric, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 199, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.

- j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. Commercial, Power-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.
 - b. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - c. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Smith, A. O. Corporation.
 - e. State Industries.
 - f. PVI
 - g. Bock Water Heaters
 - h. HTP
 2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner: For use with power-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.

- g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 199, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
 6. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.
- C. Commercial, Gas-Fired, High-Efficiency, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradford White Corporation.
 - b. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - c. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Smith, A. O. Corporation.
 - e. State Industries.
 - f. PVI
 - g. HTP
 - 2.
 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 4. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 95 percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions.
 5. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 6. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.

- b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for gas-fired, high-efficiency, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - h. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - i. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
7. Electrical Characteristics:
- a. Volts: 120.
 - b. Phase: Single.
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 - d. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: 15 A
8. Minimum Vent Diameter: 3"

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Smith, A. O. Corporation.
 - c. State Industries.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air pre-charge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

4. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 4 gal. minimum.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
- E. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- F. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include 2-psig pressure rating as required to match gas supply.
- G. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
- H. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
 2. Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped.
- I. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
 2. Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped.
- J. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

- B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base.
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.
 - 1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
 - 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 - 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.

- D. Install commercial domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- G. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- I. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- J. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- K. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for fuel-oil piping specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Water closets.
 2. Flushometer valves.
 3. Toilet seats.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [American Standard America.](#)
 - b. [Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.](#)
 - c. [Kohler Co.](#)
 - d. [TOTO USA, INC.](#)
 - e. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
 - f. Sloan
 2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.

- d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 - h. MaP Score: 1,000
 - i. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
 - j. Color: White.
3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASME A112.4.3.
 4. Coordinate "Toilet Seat" Subparagraph with "Toilet Seats" Article.

2.2 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets: Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. TOTO USA, INC.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - f. Sloan
2. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
 - h. MaP Score: 1,000
 - i. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
3. Support:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
 - b. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.

2.3 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
8. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
9. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

2.4 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats

1. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
2. Material: Plastic.
3. Type: Commercial (Standard).
4. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
5. Hinge Material: Non-corroding metal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES & SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Service basins.
 - 2. Service sinks.
 - 3. Utility sinks
 - 4. Lavatories
 - 5. Sinks
 - 6. Sink faucets.
 - 7. Laminar-flow, faucet-spout outlets.
 - 8. Supply fittings.
 - 9. Waste fittings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 224100 "Residential Plumbing Fixtures" for residential sinks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE BASINS

- A. Service Basins : Terrazzo, floor mounted.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Acorn Engineering Company.](#)
 - b. [Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.](#)
 - c. Fiat.
 - d. [Florestone Products Co., Inc.](#)
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
 - b. Tiling Flange: On three sides.
 - c. Rim Guard: On all top surfaces.
 - d. Color: by Arch.
 - e. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 (DN 80) outlet.
 - 3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
- B. Service Basins: Plastic, floor mounted.
 - 1. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.6.
 - b. Material: Cast polymer.
 - c. Nominal Size: 36 by 36 by 10 inches (915 by 915 by 255 mm).
 - d. Color: By Arch.
 - e. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 (DN 80) outlet.
 - 2. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.

2.2 SERVICE SINKS

A. Service Sinks: Enameled, cast iron, trap standard mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
 - b. Type: Service sink with back.
 - c. Color: White.
 - d. Mounting: NPS 3 (DN 80) P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
 - e. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
3. Support: Type II sink carrier..

B. Service Sinks: Vitreous china, trap standard mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Service sink with back.
 - c. Color: White.
 - d. Mounting: NPS 3 (DN 80) P-trap standard with grid strainer inlet, cleanout, and floor flange.
 - e. Rim Guard: On front and sides.
3. Support: Type II sink carrier..

C. Service Sinks: Enameled, cast iron, floor mounted.

- a. American Standard America.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
 - b. Style: With front apron and raised back.

- c. Nominal Size: 28 by 28 inches (710 by 710 mm).
- d. Color: White.
- e. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 (DN 80) outlet.
- f. Rim Guard: Coated wire.

D. Utility Sinks **<Insert drawing designation>**: Stainless steel, freestanding.

- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - c. Just Manufacturing.
- 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
 - b. Type: With backsplash.
 - c. Number of Compartments: **[One] [Two] [Three]**.
 - d. Metal Thickness: 0.063 inch (1.6 mm).
 - e. Compartment:
 - 1) Drain: Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain.
 - 2) Drain Location: Centered in compartment.
 - f. Drainboard(s): **[Not required] [Both] [Left] [Right] side(s)**.
- 3. Supports: Adjustable-length steel legs.
- 4. Faucet(s):
 - a. Number Required: **[One] [Two]**.
 - b. Mounting: On backsplash.
- 5. Supply Fittings:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 - b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
 - 1) Operation: Wheel handle.
 - 2) Risers: NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.
- 6. Waste Fittings:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
 - b. Trap(s):
 - 1) Size: NPS 2 (DN 50).
 - 2) Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-(0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

2.3 LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory L-1 & L-2: Oval, under-mount, vitreous China.

1. Manufacturers: Shall be one of the following:

- a. American Standard America.
- b. Bradley Corporation.
- c. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
- d. Delta Faucet Company.
- e. Eljer, Inc.
- f. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- g. GROHE America, Inc.
- h. Just Manufacturing.
- i. Kohler Co.
- j. Moen Incorporated.
- k. Price Pfister, Inc.
- l. Speakman Company.
- m. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- n. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- o. Sloan

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
- b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
- c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches.
- d. Faucet-Hole Punching: No holes.
- e. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
- f. Color: White.
- g. Mounting Materials: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.

2.4 SINKS

A. Sinks S-1: Stainless steel, counter mounted. Elkay ELUHAD or equal by below manufacturers.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Advance Tabco.
- b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- c. Just Manufacturing.

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
- b. Type: Ledge back.
- c. Number of Compartments: One
- d. Overall Dimensions: 18 ½ x18 ½.

- e. Material: 304, 18-8 Stainless Steel, 18 Gauge
- f. Holes: No holes
- g. Mounting Type: Undermount

B. Sinks S-2: Vitreous China, wall mounted, ADA compliant. Kohler K-2032 or equal by below manufacturers.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - c. Just Manufacturing.
 - d. Sloan
2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
 - b. Type: Ledge back
 - c. Number of Compartments: One
 - d. Overall Dimensions: 20 ³/₄ x18 ¹/₄.
 - e. Material: Vitreous China
 - f. Holes: Three, Centered.
 - g. Mounting Type: Wall mounted

C. Sinks S-3: Stainless steel, counter mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - c. Just Manufacturing.
2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
 - b. Type: Ledge back.
 - c. Number of Compartments: One
 - d. Overall Dimensions: 18x18.
 - e. Material: 304, 18-8 Stainless Steel, 18 Gauge
 - f. Holes: One, Centered.
 - g. Mounting Type: Undermount

D. Sinks S-4: Stainless steel, counter mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.

- b. [Elkay Manufacturing Co.](#)
- c. [Just Manufacturing.](#)

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
- b. Type: Ledge back.
- c. Number of Compartments: One
- d. Overall Dimensions: 18x18.
- e. Material: 304, 18-8 Stainless Steel, 18 Gauge
- f. Holes: One, Centered.
- g. Mounting Type: Undermount

E. Sinks S-5: Stainless steel, counter mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Advance Tabco.](#)
- b. [Elkay Manufacturing Co.](#)
- c. [Just Manufacturing.](#)

2. Fixture:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
- b. Type: Ledge back.
- c. Number of Compartments: One
- d. Overall Dimensions: 18x18.
- e. Material: 304, 18-8 Stainless Steel, 18 Gauge
- f. Holes: One, Centered.
- g. Mounting Type: Undermount

2.5 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Sink Faucets for S-1: Manual type, single lever, ADA compliant

1. Commercial, Polished Chrome. Centurion 111E-BN or equal by below manufacturers.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) [American Standard America.](#)
- 2) [Bradley Corporation.](#)
- 3) [Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.](#)
- 4) [Delta Faucet Company.](#)

- 5) [Eljer, Inc.](#)
 - 6) [Elkay Manufacturing Co.](#)
 - 7) [GROHE America, Inc.](#)
 - 8) [Just Manufacturing.](#)
 - 9) [Kohler Co.](#)
 - 10) [Moen Incorporated.](#)
 - 11) [Price Pfister, Inc.](#)
 - 12) Sloan
 - 13) [Speakman Company.](#)
 - 14) [T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.](#)
 - 15) [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole-punching; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
 4. Body Type: Single hole.
 5. Body Material: General-duty, brushed nickel
 6. Finish: Brushed
 7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
 8. Handle(s): Lever.
 9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
 10. Spout Type: Stationary type.
- C. Sink Faucets for S-2: Automatic-type, battery-powered, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve.
1. Commercial, Polished Chrome. Sloan ETF-880 or equal by below manufacturers.
 - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) [American Standard America.](#)
 - 2) [Bradley Corporation.](#)
 - 3) [Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.](#)
 - 4) [Delta Faucet Company.](#)
 - 5) [Eljer, Inc.](#)
 - 6) [Elkay Manufacturing Co.](#)
 - 7) [GROHE America, Inc.](#)
 - 8) [Just Manufacturing.](#)
 - 9) [Kohler Co.](#)
 - 10) [Moen Incorporated.](#)
 - 11) [Price Pfister, Inc.](#)
 - 12) Sloan
 - 13) [Speakman Company.](#)
 - 14) [T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.](#)
 - 15) [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.

4. Body Type: Single hole.
5. Body Material: General-duty, chrome plated
6. Finish: Brushed
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Automatic, battery powered, electronic sensor operated
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Stationary type.

D. Sink Faucets for S-3: Manual type, single lever, ADA compliant

1. Commercial, Polished Chrome. Centurion 111E-BN or equal by below manufacturers.

- a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) American Standard America.
- 2) Bradley Corporation.
- 3) Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
- 4) Delta Faucet Company.
- 5) Eljer, Inc.
- 6) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 7) GROHE America, Inc.
- 8) Just Manufacturing.
- 9) Kohler Co.
- 10) Moen Incorporated.
- 11) Price Pfister, Inc.
- 12) Sloan
- 13) Speakman Company.
- 14) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- 15) Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole-punching; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Single hole.
5. Body Material: General-duty, brushed nickel
6. Finish: Brushed
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Stationary type.

E. Sink Faucets for S-4: Manual type, single lever, ADA compliant

1. Commercial, Polished Chrome. Centurion 111E-BN or equal by below manufacturers.

- a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) American Standard America.

- 2) Bradley Corporation.
- 3) Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
- 4) Delta Faucet Company.
- 5) Eljer, Inc.
- 6) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 7) GROHE America, Inc.
- 8) Just Manufacturing.
- 9) Kohler Co.
- 10) Moen Incorporated.
- 11) Price Pfister, Inc.
- 12) Sloan
- 13) Speakman Company.
- 14) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- 15) Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole-punching; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Single hole.
5. Body Material: General-duty, brushed nickel
6. Finish: Brushed
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Stationary type.

F. Sink Faucets for S-5: Manual type, single lever, ADA compliant

1. Commercial, Polished Chrome. Centurion 111E-BN or equal by below manufacturers.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) American Standard America.
- 2) Bradley Corporation.
- 3) Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
- 4) Delta Faucet Company.
- 5) Eljer, Inc.
- 6) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 7) GROHE America, Inc.
- 8) Just Manufacturing.
- 9) Kohler Co.
- 10) Moen Incorporated.
- 11) Price Pfister, Inc.
- 12) Sloan
- 13) Speakman Company.
- 14) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- 15) Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole-punching; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Single hole.
5. Body Material: General-duty, brushed nickel
6. Finish: Brushed
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Stationary type.

G.

H. Lavatory Faucets for L-1: Manual type, dual lever, mixing, solid-brass valve. Kohler 10270 or equal by below manufacturers.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard America.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
 - d. Delta Faucet Company.
 - e. Eljer, Inc.
 - f. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - g. GROHE America, Inc.
 - h. Just Manufacturing.
 - i. Kohler Co.
 - j. Moen Incorporated.
 - k. Price Pfister, Inc.
 - l. Sloan
 - m. Speakman Company.
 - n. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - o. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
4. Body Type: Single hole.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Brushed Stainless
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Mounting Type: under-mount
9. Spout: Stationary type.
10. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

I. Lavatory Faucets for L-2: Automatic-type, battery-powered, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve. Kohler K-2210 or equal by below manufacturers.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [American Standard America.](#)
 - b. [Bradley Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.](#)
 - d. [Delta Faucet Company.](#)
 - e. [Eljer, Inc.](#)
 - f. [Elkay Manufacturing Co.](#)
 - g. [GROHE America, Inc.](#)
 - h. [Just Manufacturing.](#)
 - i. [Kohler Co.](#)
 - j. [Moen Incorporated.](#)
 - k. [Price Pfister, Inc.](#)
 - l. Sloan
 - m. [Speakman Company.](#)
 - n. [T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.](#)
 - o. [Zurn Industries, LLC.](#)
2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole-punching; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
5. Body Type: Single hole.
6. Body Material: Commercial, chrome plated, vandal resistant
7. Finish: Chrome plated
8. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm
9. Mounting Type: Under-mount
10. Spout: Rigid type.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

2.6 LAMINAR-FLOW, FAUCET-SPOUT OUTLETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout-outlet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Description: Chrome-plated brass, faucet-spout outlet that produces non-aerating, laminar stream. Include external or internal thread that mates with faucet outlet for attachment to faucets where indicated and flow-rate range that includes flow of faucet.

2.7 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.

2.8 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
 - 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
 - 3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

SECTION 224713 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes drinking fountains and related components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountains.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

- A. Drinking Fountains: Stainless steel, wall mounted.

- 1. Stainless-Steel Drinking Fountains:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- 2) Haws Corporation.

- 2. Standards:

- a. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
- b. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

- 3. Type Receptor: With back.

- 4. Receptor Shape: Round.

- 5. Back Panel: Stainless-steel wall plate behind drinking fountain.

- 6. Bubblers: Two, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.

- 7. Control: Push button.

- 8. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.

- 9. Supply Piping: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.

- 10. Drain Piping: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 chrome-plated brass P-trap and waste.

11. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type III lavatory carrier.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Set pedestal drinking fountains on floor.
- C. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224713

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 5500 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.

- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Re-greasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.

F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC or NEBB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.

B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Owner.

D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

F. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been

satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 - SCOPE

- A. Balance existing and new RTU's in area of scope on the drawings. Balance outside air to CFM indicated on drawings. Ensure proper operation of all economizers. Indicate any deficiencies in flow or problems with operation of equipment and any possibly reasons for problems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, engage one of the following:
 - 1. Certified Test and Balance.
 - 2. Bonneville Test and Balance.
 - 3. BTC Test and Balance.
 - 4. Diamond Test and Balance.
 - 5. R and S Analysis
 - 6. Intermountain Test and Balance
 - 7. Test and Balancing, Inc.
 - 8. Independent Test and Balance

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- G. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

- H. Examine terminal units; such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- I. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 3. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 4. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 5. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 6. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 7. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", or ASHRAE 111-1988, or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems".
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 23 07 13 "Duct Insulation," Section 23 07 16 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 23 07 19 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. All instruments used by the Contractor shall have been calibrated within the previous 12 months. The final balance report shall contain copies of calibration documents showing calibration tolerances, date of calibration and calibrating firm.
- E. Air and water quantities shall be balanced to within 5% of the quantities shown.
- F. Balance air flow at duct branch damper with outlet dampers full open.
- G. Test, adjust and record fan RPM to design requirements, record initial and final readings.
- H. Test and record motor amps, initial and final readings.
- I. Make pitot tube traverse readings of main ducts and obtain design CFM for supply, return and outside air systems by adjusting fans and dampers.
- J. Test and record systems static pressures, suction and discharge; record initial and final readings.
- K. Test and adjust each terminal unit.
- L. Check and record inlet static pressures and modulation limit CFM values, initial and final readings after adjustments.
- M. The Balancing Contractor shall have a Controls Mechanic available at all times to assist the balancing personnel in adjusting control devices.
- N. Clearly mark the final position of all dampers, diffusers, reheat boxes, etc. with permanent identification material, neatly applied so as to be easily read and understood.
- O. Confusing or illegible markings shall be removed and reapplied as directed by the Project Manager.
- P. All mechanical HVAC systems, air and water, shown on the plans shall be tested and adjusted to design flow. If heating air flow values are different than cooling, provide certification that heating CFM values are within design.
- Q. Replace sheaves and drives where required to meet design conditions.
- R. Copies of a formal balance report shall be prepared and submitted for inclusion in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals. The report shall contain a complete, legible schedule of:
 - a. All equipment outlets/inlets and their respective flows
 - b. Pitot tube traverse readings and associated calculations

- c. Reheat box settings, GPM and CFM
 - d. Box static pressures at inlets
 - e. Box CFM limits (maximum and minimum)
 - f. Status of each pump and fan, including RPM, AMPS, suction and discharge static pressures, and flow rates.
 - g. A set of master plans shall be bound with the schedules (11" x 17" maximum) identifying the location of each inlet/outlet and device tested.
 - h. Calibration documents

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts."

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient spaces in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 6. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to

adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
 - 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
 - 1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR DUAL-DUCT SYSTEMS

- A. Verify that the cooling coil is capable of full-system airflow, and set mixing boxes at full-cold airflow position for fan volume.
- B. Measure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate controls of mixing boxes and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing boxes.
 - 1. If insufficient static pressure exists, increase airflow at the fan.
- C. Test and adjust the constant-volume mixing boxes as follows:
 - 1. Verify both hot and cold operations by adjusting the thermostat and observing changes in air temperature and volume.
 - 2. Verify sufficient inlet static pressure before making volume adjustments.
 - 3. Adjust mixing boxes to indicated airflows within specified tolerances. Measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse readings or by measuring static pressure at mixing-box taps if provided by mixing-box manufacturer.
- D. Do not over pressurize ducts.
- E. Re-measure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate controls of mixing boxes and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing boxes.
- F. Adjust variable-air-volume, dual-duct systems in the same way as constant-volume, dual-duct systems; adjust maximum- and minimum-airflow setting of each mixing box.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Efficiency rating.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
1. New filters are installed.
 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 3. Drain pans are clean.
 4. Fans are clean.
 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- B. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 4. Balance each air outlet.

3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 5 percent.

3.11 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
 2. Fan curves.
 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Engineer's name and address.
 6. Contractor's name and address.
 7. Report date.
 8. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 9. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 10. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 11. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 12. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 14. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.

- b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
- c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
- d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
- f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).

G. Instrument Calibration Reports:

- 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

3.12 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

- 1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
- 2. Check the following for each system:
 - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
 - b. Measure water flow of at least 10 percent of terminals.
 - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
 - d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
 - e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

- 1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Engineer.
- 2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Owner.
- 3. Engineer shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- 4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- 5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

- C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
 - 1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. The Test and Balance Contractor shall include an extended warranty of 90 days after the completion of the project, during which time the Owner may request a recheck or re-set of any outlet, inlet, control, or mechanical unit.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 4. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
 - 1. For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Provide fiberglass faced duct wrap Type IV with factory applied flame retardant foil reinforced Kraft facing FRK-25, U.L. Label.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.5 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [ABI](#), Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. [Avery Dennison Corporation](#), Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. [Compac Corporation](#); 120.
 - d. [Venture Tape](#); 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.6 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [ITW Insulation Systems](#); Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. [RPR Products, Inc.](#); Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.](#); CWP-1.
 - 2) [GEMCO; CD](#).
 - 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.](#); CD.
 - 4) [Nelson Stud Welding](#); TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.](#); CHP-1.
 - 2) [GEMCO](#); Cupped Head Weld Pin.
 - 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.](#); Cupped Head.
 - 4) [Nelson Stud Welding](#); CHP.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.](#); Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) [GEMCO](#); Perforated Base.
 - 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.](#); Spindle.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, aluminum, or stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) [GEMCO](#); Nylon Hangers.
 - 2) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.](#); Nylon Insulation Hangers.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.](#); Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) [GEMCO](#); Peel & Press.
 - 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.](#); Self Stick.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, aluminum, or stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, aluminum, or stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.](#); RC-150.
 - 2) [GEMCO](#); R-150.
 - 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.](#); WA-150.
 - 4) [Nelson Stud Welding](#); Speed Clips.

- b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 - 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) GEMCO.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
 - D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.
- 2.7 CORNER ANGLES
- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
 - B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
 - C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Duct insulation wrap in exposed corridors shall be canvas covered and painted to match existing duct insulation.

- B. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- C. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- D. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- E. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- F. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c. Adhere insulation with 4" strips of Insulation Bonding Adhesive at 8" on center.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c. Adhere insulation with 4" strips of Insulation Bonding Adhesive at 8" on center. Cover longitudinal joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not over-compress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not over-compress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Engineer, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 - 1. Indoor, supply, return and outdoor air.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
 - 1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
 - 3. Flexible connectors.
 - 4. Vibration-control devices.
 - 5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round, rectangular, and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Concealed, round, rectangular, and flat-oval, supply and return-air duct insulation shall be R-12 and shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.14 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick with a Polyfilm Moisture Barrier (PFMB) coating.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Service Regulators: 65 psig (450 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

B. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.

C. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For natural-gas piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
 - 1.
 - 2. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 3. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
 - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
4. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 5. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
 6. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
 7. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
- C. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B).
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
 2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
 - a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
 - b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
 - c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
 3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
- D. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
 - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
 - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
 - d. Outlet shall be threaded or suitable for welded connection.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
 - b. Outlet shall be threaded or suitable for welded connection.
 - c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.

- d. Factory-connected anode.
- e. Tracer wire connection.
- f. Ultraviolet shield.
- g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: **0.5 psig (3.45 kPa)**.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: **72 inches (1830 mm.)**

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: **125 psig (862 kPa)**.

D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than **1000 deg F (540 deg C)** complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: **125 psig (862 kPa)**.
 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves **1 inch (25 mm)** and smaller.
 6. Service Mark: Valves **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** to **NPS 2 (DN 50)** shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 2. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 5. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. CWP Rating: **600 psig (4140 kPa)**.
 8. Listing: Valves **NPS 1 (DN 25)** and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. CWP Rating: **600 psig (4140 kPa)**.
 8. Listing: Valves **NPS 1 (DN 25)** and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
2. Plug: Bronze.
3. Ends: Threaded, socket, as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
5. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.

1. Body: PE.
2. Ball: PE.
3. Stem: Acetal.
4. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
5. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
6. CWP Rating: 80 psig (552 kPa).
7. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 60 deg C).
8. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
9. Include plastic valve extension.
10. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

H. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.5 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

A. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.

1. Pilot operated.
2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
5. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
6. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
7. Normally closed.
8. Visual position indicator.

2.6 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

A. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Maximum Operating Pressure: **5 psig (34.5 kPa)**.
3. Cast-aluminum body with nickel-plated chrome steel internal parts.
4. Nitrile-rubber valve washer.
5. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.
6. Threaded end connections complying with ASME B1.20.1.
7. Wall mounting bracket with bubble level indicator.

B. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Maximum Operating Pressure: **7 psig (48 kPa)**.
3. Cast-aluminum body with stainless-steel internal parts.
4. Nitrile-rubber, reset-stem o-ring seal.
5. Valve position, open or closed, indicator.
6. Composition valve seat with clapper held by spring or magnet locking mechanism.
7. Level indicator.
8. End Connections: Threaded for valves **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.

2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.

5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **5 psig (34.5 kPa)**.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **5 psig (34.5 kPa)**.

2.8 DIELECTRIC UNIONS

A. Dielectric Unions:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **125 psig (860 kPa)** minimum at **180 deg F (82 deg C)**.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** wide and **4 mils (0.1 mm)** thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to **30 inches (750 mm)** deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least **36 inches (900 mm)** below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than **36 inches (900 mm)** below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
 - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
- F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- G. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.2 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.

- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- Q. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- R. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment.
- S. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- T. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- U. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
 - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

- G. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- D. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 2. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 3. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, **12 inches (300 mm)** below finished grade, except **6 inches (150 mm)** below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
 - 3. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, piping **NPS 2 (DN 25)** and smaller shall be one of the following:

1. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 2. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, piping over NPS 2 shall be the following:
1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.11 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
- B. Underground: PE valves.

3.12 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves shall be the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 231123

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
 - 2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Sheet metal materials.
 - 4. Duct liner.
 - 5. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 6. Hangers and supports.
 - 7. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
 - 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
 - 1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
 - 2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
 - 3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. HVAC Duct shall be fabricated from galvanized steel in accordance with SMACNA requirements. Abrasive, corrosive, or hazardous materials shall be conveyed by systems described in Industrial Ventilation, latest edition, in harmony with the Fume Hood Section of these Design Standards. Nonmetallic duct shall not be used.
- B. All seams of ducts shall be sealed with mastic or mastic plus tape or gasketing as appropriate to limit the air leakage to SMACNA requirements.
- C. Flexible ductwork shall only be used at terminal units and shall not exceed eight feet. Hard turns, offsets, or kinks will not be allowed. Provide duct supports every three feet.
- D. High pressure ductwork shall be galvanized steel spiral lockseam construction.
- E. The high pressure duct and fittings shall be manufactured by the same firm.
- F. High pressure ductwork shall be tested and total allowable leakage of the system shall not exceed SMACNA requirements.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS – SEAL CLASS A

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Lindab Inc.](#)
 - b. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
 - c. [SEMCO Incorporated.](#)
 - d. [Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **60 Inches (1524 mm)** in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Fabricate round ducts larger than **90 inches (2286 mm)** in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than **72 inches (1830 mm)** in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Linx Industries \(formerly Lindab\).](#)
 2. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
 3. [MKT Metal Manufacturing.](#)
 4. [SEMCO LLC.](#)
 5. [Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.](#)
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.

- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **60 Inches (1524 mm)** in Diameter: Flanged.
 2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than **90 inches (2286 mm)** in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than **72 inches (1830 mm)** in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Inner Duct: Minimum **0.028-inch (0.7-mm)** perforated galvanized sheet steel having **3/32-inch-(2.4-mm-)** diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K)** at **75 deg F (24 deg C)** mean temperature.
 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: **0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K)** at **75 deg F (24 deg C)** mean temperature.

2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G60 (Z180)**.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 - 2. Tape Width: **3 inches (76 mm)**.
 - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: **10-inch wg (2500 Pa)**, positive and negative.
 - 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 - 8. Service Temperature: **Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C)**.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 - 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: **10-inch wg (2500 Pa)**, positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
 - 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 11. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
 - 12. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: **10-inch wg (2500 Pa)**, positive or negative.
 - 13. Service: Indoor or outdoor.

14. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.8 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.

3. [Hilti Corp.](#)
 4. [Kinetics Noise Control.](#)
 5. [Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.](#)
 6. [Mason Industries.](#)
 7. [TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.](#)
 8. [Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd..](#)
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of **1 inch (25 mm)**, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.
- F. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** and Lower: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)**: Seal Class A.
 - 4. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A
 - 5. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** and Lower: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)**: Seal Class A.
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** and Lower: Seal Class C.
 - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)**: Seal Class B.
 - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," **Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M)**, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within **24 inches (610 mm)** of each elbow and within **48 inches (1200 mm)** of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of **16 feet (5 m)**.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
 - 1. Space lateral supports a maximum of **40 feet (12 m)** o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of **80 feet (24 m)** o.c.
 - 2. Brace a change of direction longer than **12 feet (3.7 m)**.
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid pre-stressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than **3-Inch wg (750 Pa)**: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of **2-Inch wg (500 Pa)** or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
 - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
 - 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
 - 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.

5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner or any ductwork noted on mechanical plans that require painting. Apply one coat of flat, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.10 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
 1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, PVC-coated, galvanized sheet steel with thicker coating on duct exterior or pre-insulated high-density polyethylene.
- B. Supply Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **1-inch wg (250 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 24.
 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **4-inch wg (1000 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
- C. Return Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **1-inch wg (250 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 24.
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **3-inch wg (750 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative **3-inch wg (750 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
 2. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.
 - a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
 - b. Concealed: Type 304, welded black iron.
 - c. Welded seams and joints.
 - d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - f. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
 3. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods:
 - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
 - d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
 - e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - g. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
 4. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting Laboratory and Process (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 3 and 4) Air:

- a. Type 316, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 1) Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - 2) Concealed: No. 2B finish.
 - b. PVC-coated, galvanized sheet steel with thicker coating on duct interior.
 - c. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **4-inch wg (1000 Pa)**.
 - d. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - e. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **1-inch wg (250 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 24.
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **3-inch wg (750 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
- G. Liner:
1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.
- H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
1. Supply Air Ducts: **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.
 2. Acoustical Performance:
 - a. NRC: 1.09 according to ASTM C 423.
 - b. STC: 40 according to ASTM E 90.
- I. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity **1000 fpm (5 m/s)** or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity **1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s)**:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

- 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- c. Velocity **1500 fpm (7.6 m/s)** or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c.
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity **1000 fpm (5 m/s)** or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity **1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s)**: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity **1500 fpm (7.6 m/s)** or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, **12 Inches (305 mm)** and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, **14 Inches (356 mm)** and Larger in Diameter.
- J. Branch Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity **1000 fpm (5 m/s)** or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity **1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s)**: Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity **1500 fpm (7.6 m/s)** or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

BLANK PAGE

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Manual volume dampers.
 2. Control dampers.
 3. Turning vanes.
 4. Remote damper operators.
 5. Duct-mounted access doors.
 6. Flexible connectors.
 7. Flexible ducts.
 8. Duct accessory hardware.
 9. Louvers

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180).
 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2.

- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, **1/4-inch (6-mm)** minimum diameter for lengths **36 inches (900 mm)** or less; **3/8-inch (10-mm)** minimum diameter for lengths longer than **36 inches (900 mm)**.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)
 - b. [American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.](#)
 - d. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
 - e. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - f. [Pottorff.](#)
 - g. [Ruskin Company.](#)
 - h. [Trox USA Inc.](#)
 - i. [Vent Products Company, Inc.](#)
 - 2. Standard leakage rating
 - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 4. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, **0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-)** thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, **0.064 inch (1.62 mm)** thick.
 - 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 - 7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of **3-inch wg (750 Pa)** or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. [American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)

4. [Greenheck Fan Corporation.](#)
5. [Lloyd Industries, Inc.](#)
6. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
7. [Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.](#)
8. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
9. [NCA Manufacturing, Inc.](#)
10. [Pottorff.](#)
11. [Ruskin Company.](#)
12. [Vent Products Company, Inc.](#)
13. [Young Regulator Company.](#)

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. **0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-)** thick, galvanized sheet steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of **6 inches (152 mm)**.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized-steel.
4. **0.064 inch (1.62 mm)** thick single skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From **minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C)**.

F. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of **3-inch wg (750 Pa)** or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.5 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [Ductmate Industries, Inc.](#)
2. [Duro Dyne Inc.](#)
3. [Elgen Manufacturing.](#)
4. [METALAIRE, Inc.](#)
5. [SEMCO Incorporated.](#)
6. [Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)

- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall.
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to **48 inches (1200 mm)** wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.6 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Pottorff](#).
 - 2. [Ventfabrics, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Young Regulator Company..](#)
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Brass.
- D. Cable: Stainless steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Steel.

2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Ductmate Industries, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Elgen Manufacturing.](#)
 - 5. [Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.](#)
 - 6. [Greenheck Fan Corporation.](#)
 - 7. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
 - 8. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - 9. [Pottorff](#).
 - 10. [Ventfabrics, Inc.](#)
 - 11. [Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures **7-2 (7-2M)**, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: **1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm)**butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than **12 Inches (300 mm)** Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to **18 Inches (460 mm)** Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to **24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm)**: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than **24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm)**: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. [Ductmate Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. [Duro Dyne Inc.](#)
 3. [Elgen Manufacturing.](#)
 4. [Ventfabrics, Inc.](#)
 5. [Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)** wide attached to two strips of **2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-)** wide, **0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-)** thick, galvanized sheet steel or **0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-)** thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 1. Minimum Weight: **26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).**
 2. Tensile Strength: **480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm)** in the warp and **360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm)** in the filling.
 3. Service Temperature: **Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).**

2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. [Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.](#)
 2. [McGill AirFlow LLC.](#)
 3. [Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)

- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
 - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:
 - 1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.
 - 2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

2.10 LOUVERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ruskin Company
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation
 - 3. Pottorff
- B. Fabrication: Hidden support style.
 - 1. Frame:
 - a. Frame Depth: 6 inches .
 - b. Material: Extruded aluminum, Alloy 6063-T5.
 - c. Wall Thickness: 0.125 inch, nominal.
 - 2. Blades:
 - a. Style: Drainable.
 - b. Material: Formed aluminum, Alloy 6063-T5.
 - c. Wall Thickness: 0.081 inch, nominal.
 - d. Angle: 37-1/2 degrees.
 - e. Centers: 4 inches, nominal.
 - 3. Gutters: Drain gutter in head frame and each blade.
 - 4. Downspouts: Downspouts in jambs to drain water from louver for minimum water cascade from blade to blade.
 - 5. Fabrication:
 - a. Mullion/Hidden Intermediate Support Style – Design incorporates visible mullions or frames at the perimeter of the louver and at section joints only. Rear-mounted hidden blade supports are utilized where required and do not interrupt the louver blade sightlines. The rear-mounted blade support depth varies depending on louver height and the design windload.
 - 6. Assembly:
 - a. Factory assembled louver components. Mechanically fastened construction.
- C. Performance Data:
 - 1. Performance Ratings: AMCA licensed.
 - a. Based on testing 48 inch by 48 inch size unit in accordance with AMCA 500.
 - 2. Free Area: 58 percent, nominal.
 - 3. Maximum Recommended Air Flow through Free Area: 1250 feet per minute.
 - 4. Air Flow: 11,600 cubic feet per minute.
 - 5. Maximum Pressure Drop (Intake): 0.20 inches w.g. .
 - 6. Water Penetration: Maximum of 0.01 ounces per square foot of free area at an air flow of 1250 feet per minute free area velocity when tested for 15 minutes.
- D. Bird Screen:
 - 1. Aluminum: Aluminum, 1/4 inch x 1/4 inch.

2. Frame: Removable, re-wireable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
- F. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- G. Access Door Sizes:
 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- H. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- I. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- J. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- K. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- L. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts in-directly with maximum 36-inch (900-mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- M. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus clamp-type draw bands.

- N. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of **1/4-inch (6-mm)** movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
4. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
2. Centrifugal wall ventilators.
3. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
4. In-line centrifugal fans.
5. Propeller fans.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Broan-NuTone LLC.
 2. Carnes Company.
 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 4. Loren Cook Company.
 5. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
 2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Non-fusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, **1/2-inch (13-mm)** mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; **1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-)** thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and **1-1/2-inch (40-mm)** wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: **14 inches**.

3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Burglar Bars: **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick steel bars welded in place to form **6-inch (150-mm)** squares.
7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
8. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides.

- G. Capacities and Characteristics:
- a. See Drawings

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL WALL VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.
 2. Broan-NuTone LLC.
 3. Carnes Company.
 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 5. Loren Cook Company.
 6. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; venturi inlet cone.
- C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Non-fusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, **1/2-inch (13-mm)** mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Wall Grille: Ring type for flush mounting.
 5. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in wall sleeve; factory set to close when fan stops.
 6. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

- F. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. See Drawings

2.3 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Broan-NuTone LLC.
 - 2. Carnes Company.
 - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 4. Loren Cook Company.
 - 5. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- D. Grille: Aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
- E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
 - 3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
 - 4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
 - 5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless-steel springs, and fusible link.
 - 6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
 - 7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
 - 8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. See Drawings

2.4 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carnes Company.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.

3. [Loren Cook Company](#).
 4. [PennBarry](#).
- B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door.
- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- F. Accessories:
1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
 3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 4. Fan Guards: **1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm)** mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. See drawings.

2.5 PROPELLER FANS

- A. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [Broan-NuTone LLC](#).
 2. [Carnes Company](#).
 3. [Loren Cook Company](#).
 4. [PennBarry](#).
- B. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.
- C. Steel Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gage steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.
- D. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

- E. Fan Drive: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- F. Fan Drive:
 - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 - 2. Statically and dynamically balanced.
 - 3. Selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
 - 4. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.
 - 5. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
 - 6. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 7. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L_{10} of 100,000 hours.
 - 8. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 - 9. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
 - 10. Belts: Oil resistant, non-sparking, and non-static; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
 - 11. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Gravity Shutters: Aluminum blades in aluminum frame; interlocked blades with nylon bearings.
 - 2. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
 - 3. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
 - 4. Weathershield Hood: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
 - 5. Weathershield Front Guard: Galvanized steel with expanded metal screen.
 - 6. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 7. Disconnect Switch: Non-fusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. See Drawings.

2.6 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- D. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stops having a static deflection of **1 inch (25 mm)**. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Adjust belt tension.
 - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Perforated diffusers.
4. Louver face diffusers.
5. Linear bar diffusers.
6. Linear slot diffusers.
7. Adjustable bar grilles.
8. Fixed face grilles.
9. Linear bar grilles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 089116 "Operable Wall Louvers" and Section 089119 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Anemostat Products: a Mestek company.](#)
 - b. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - c. [Hart & Cooley Inc.](#)
 - d. [Krueger.](#)
 - e. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - f. [Price Industries.](#)
 - g. [Shoemaker Mfg. Co.](#)
 - h. [Titus.](#)
 - i. [Tuttle & Bailey.](#)
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
 3. Material: Aluminum.
 4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
 5. Face Size: See drawings
 6. Face Style: See drawings
 7. Mounting: See drawings
 8. Pattern: See drawings
 9. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.
 10. Accessories:
 - a. Equalizing grid.
 - b. Plaster ring.
 - c. Safety chain.
 - d. Wire guard.
 - e. Sectorizing baffles.
 - f. Operating rod extension.

B. Perforated Diffuser:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Anemostat Products: a Mestek company.](#)
 - b. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - c. [Hart & Cooley Inc.](#)
 - d. [Krueger.](#)
 - e. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - f. [Price Industries.](#)
 - g. [Shoemaker Mfg. Co.](#)
 - h. [Titus.](#)
 - i. [Tuttle & Bailey.](#)
- 2.
3. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
4. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with aluminum face.
5. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
6. Face Size: See drawings
7. Duct Inlet: See drawings
8. Face Style: Flush.

9. Mounting: See drawings.
10. Pattern Controller: None.
11. Dampers: None
12. Accessories:
 - a. Equalizing grid.
 - b. Plaster ring.
 - c. Safety chain.
 - d. Wire guard.
 - e. Sectorizing baffles.
 - f. Operating rod extension.

C. Louver Face Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - b. Carnes Company.
 - c. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - d. Krueger.
 - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - f. Price Industries.
 - g. Shoemaker Mfg. Co.
 - h. Titus.
 - i. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Face Size: See drawings
6. Mounting: See Drawings
7. Pattern: See Drawings
8. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.
9. Accessories:
 - a. Square to round neck adaptor.
 - b. Adjustable pattern vanes.
 - c. Throw reducing vanes.
 - d. Equalizing grid.
 - e. Plaster ring.
 - f. Safety chain.
 - g. Wire guard.
 - h. Sectorizing baffles.
 - i. Operating rod extension.

2.2 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Bar Diffuser:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - b. Carnes Company.
 - c. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - d. Krueger.
 - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - f. Price Industries.
 - g. Shoemaker Mfg. Co.
 - h. Titus.
 - i. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Narrow Core Spacing Arrangement: **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** thick blades spaced **1/4 inch (6 mm)** apart, 15-degree deflection.
6. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.

B. Linear Slot Diffuser:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - b. Carnes Company.
 - c. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - d. Krueger.
 - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - f. Price Industries.
 - g. Shoemaker Mfg. Co.
 - h. Titus.
 - i. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material - Shell: Aluminum,.
4. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
5. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
6. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
7. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
8. Slot Width: See drawings.
9. Number of Slots: See drawings.
10. Length: See Drawings.
11. Accessories: Engineered plenum.

2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - b. Carnes Company.
 - c. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - d. Krueger.
 - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - f. Price Industries.
 - g. Shoemaker Mfg. Co.
 - h. Titus.
 - i. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced **1/2 inch (13 mm)** apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 238239.19 - WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 4. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Berko; Marley Engineered Products.
 2. Markel Products; TPI Corporation.
 3. Marley Engineered Products.
 4. QMark; Marley Engineered Products.
 5. Trane.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 CABINET

- A. Front Panel: Stamped-steel louver or Extruded-aluminum bar grille, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.
- B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's custom color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

2.4 COIL

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high-temperature protection. Provide integral circuit breaker for overcurrent protection.

2.5 FAN AND MOTOR

- A. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.
- B. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.6 CONTROLS

- A. Controls: Unit-mounted thermostat. Low-voltage relay with transformer kit.
- B. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection with disconnect switch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive wall and ceiling unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION 238239.19

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Armored cable, Type AC, rated 600 V or less.
5. Photovoltaic cable, Type PV, rated 2000 V or less.
6. Mineral-insulated cable, Type MI, rated 600 V or less.
7. Tray cable, Type TC, rated 600 V or less.
8. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
9. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables" for single-conductor and multiconductor cables, cable splices, and terminations for electrical distribution systems with 601 to 35,000 V.
2. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.
3. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.
4. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PV: Photovoltaic.
- B. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- C. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Owner and Engineer Review/Approval.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Alpha Wire Company.
 - 2. American Bare Conductor.
 - 3. Belden Inc.
 - 4. Cerro Wire LLC.
 - 5. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 6. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
 - 7. Okonite Company (The).
 - 8. Service Wire Co.
 - 9. Southwire Company.
 - 10. WESCO.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 - 2. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 3. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
 - 5. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 6. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 7. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- F. Shield:
 - 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Alpha Wire Company](#).
 - 2. [American Bare Conductor](#).
 - 3. [Belden Inc](#).
 - 4. [Cerro Wire LLC](#).
 - 5. [Encore Wire Corporation](#).
 - 6. [General Cable Technologies Corporation](#).
 - 7. [Okonite Company \(The\)](#).
 - 8. [Southwire Company](#).
 - 9. [WESCO](#).
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.
- E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
2. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
3. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
5. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
6. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
7. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 2. Alpha Wire Company.
 3. American Bare Conductor.
 4. Belden Inc.
 5. Encore Wire Corporation.
 6. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
 7. Okonite Company (The).
 8. Service Wire Co.
 9. Southwire Company.
 10. WESCO.
- C. Standards:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 3. RoHS compliant.
 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Circuits:
1. Single circuit and Multi-circuit with color-coded conductors.
 2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors. Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.
- F. Ground Conductor: Bare or Insulated.
- G. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.

2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

H. Armor: Steel or Aluminum, interlocked.

I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.4 ARMORED CABLE, TYPE AC

A. Description: A factory assembly of insulated current-carrying conductors with or without an equipment grounding conductor in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
2. Alpha Wire Company.
3. American Bare Conductor.
4. Belden Inc.
5. Cerro Wire LLC.
6. Encore Wire Corporation.
7. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
8. Okonite Company (The).
9. Service Wire Co.
10. Southwire Company.
11. WESCO.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Comply with UL 4.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit and Multi-circuit with color-coded conductors.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors. Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.

F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

G. Conductor Insulation: Type THHN/THWN-2. Comply with UL 83.

H. Armor: Steel or Aluminum, interlocked.

2.5 TRAY CABLE, TYPE TC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of insulated current-carrying conductors with or without an equipment grounding conductor in a nonmetallic jacket.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Alpha Wire Company.
 2. Belden Inc.
 3. Encore Wire Corporation.
 4. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
 5. Okonite Company (The).
 6. Service Wire Co.
 7. Southwire Company.
 8. WESCO.
- C. Standards:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 2. RoHS compliant.
 3. Comply with UL 1277.
 4. Comply with ICEA S-73-532/NEMA WC 57 for Type TC cables used for control, thermocouple extension, and instrumentation.
 5. Comply with ICEA S-95-658/NEMA WC 70 for Type TC cables used for power distribution.
 6. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors. Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.
- E. Ground Conductor: Bare or Insulated.
- F. Conductor Insulation: Type XHHW-2. Comply with UL 44.
- G. Shield: Metallic.

2.6 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
 2. CommScope, Inc.
 3. Comtran Corporation.
 4. Draka Cableteq USA; a Prysmian Group company.
 5. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.

6. [Radix Wire.](#)
 7. [Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corp.](#)
 8. [Superior Essex Inc.](#)
 9. [West Penn Wire.](#)
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.7 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [3M Electrical Products.](#)
 2. [AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 3. [Gardner Bender.](#)
 4. [Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.](#)
 5. [Ideal Industries, Inc.](#)
 6. [ILSCO.](#)
 7. [NSi Industries LLC.](#)
 8. [O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.](#)
 9. [Service Wire Co.](#)
 10. [TE Connectivity Ltd.](#)
 11. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: Copper or Aluminum.
2. Type: One or Two hole with long barrels.
3. Termination: Compression or Crimp.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- F. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway, Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC, Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **is only allowed in construction types and building types allowed by code.**
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG Armored cable, Type AC Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, and strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- M. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit Type TC-ER cable with braided shield Type TC-ER cable with dual tape shield.
- N. PV Circuits: Type USE-2 for PV source circuits rated at 600 V or less.
- O. PV Circuits: Type PV for PV source circuits rated at 600 V.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means; including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
- C. Wiring Method:
 - 1. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
 - 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than un-spliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements:
 - a. Generator
 - b. Panels
 - c. Mechanical
 - d. .
 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
 4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
 5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
 - 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Category 5e balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 3. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 4. Category 6a balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 5. Balanced twisted pair cabling hardware.
 - 6. RS-485 cabling.
 - 7. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 8. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 9. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with flat white paint. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.3 CATEGORY 5e BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 - 4. CommScope, Inc.
 - 5. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 - 6. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
 - 8. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
 - 9. West Penn Wire.
- C. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP), Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP), or Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Riser and Plenum.
- G. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

2.4 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 - 3. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 4. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 - 5. CommScope, Inc.
 - 6. Draka USA.
 - 7. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 - 8. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 9. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 10. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
 - 11. Superior Essex Inc.

12. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.

- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP), Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP), or Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Riser and Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Yellow thermoplastic.

2.5 CATEGORY 6a BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M.
 - 2. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 - 3. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 4. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 - 5. CommScope, Inc.
 - 6. Draka USA.
 - 7. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 - 8. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 9. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 10. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
 - 11. Superior Essex Inc.
 - 12. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP), Screened twisted pairs (F/UTP), or Screened and shielded twisted pairs (F/FTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Riser and Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Yellow thermoplastic.

2.6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M.
 2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
 3. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 4. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 5. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 6. CommScope, Inc.
 7. Draka USA.
 8. Dynacom Corporation.
 9. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 10. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 11. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 12. KRONE Incorporated.
 13. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 14. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
 15. Molex Premise Networks.
 16. Panduit Corp.
 17. Siemon Co. (The).
 18. Superior Essex Inc.
 19. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
- C. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.
- E. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair cable indicated.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
 3. Standards:
 - a. Category 5e, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-2.
 - b. Category 5e, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-3.
 - c. Category 6, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-4.
 - d. Category 6, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.5.
 - e. Category 6a, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-41.
 - f. Category 6a, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.51.
 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- K. Faceplate:

1. Two port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall boxes.
2. Eight port, vertical double-gang faceplates designed to mount to double-gang wall boxes.
3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of balanced twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.7 TWIN-AXIAL DATA HIGHWAY CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, 4 pairs, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, 4 pairs, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
7. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>](#)

2.8 RS-232 CABLE

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

B. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 232-F:

1. Three, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.

4. PVC jacket.
5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. NFPA 70 Type: Type CM.
7. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

C. Plenum-Type, TIA 232-F:

1. Three, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PE insulation.
3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.9 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

2.10 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.

3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.11 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Encore Wire Corporation.
 2. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
 3. Service Wire Co.
 4. Southwire Company.
- B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway.
- C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes power-limited tray cable, in cable tray.
- D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway Type XHHW-2, complying with UL 44 in raceway power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes power-limited tray cable, in cable tray Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83, in raceway.
- E. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.
 1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.

2.12 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG size as recommended by system manufacturer.
 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

3. Multi-conductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wire ways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
 2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches (102 mm) square by 2-1/8 inches (53 mm) deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.

3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits **3 inches (75 mm)** above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with **96-inch (2440-mm)** dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
 5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inches (760 mm)** and not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before derailing. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
 12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
 13. Provide strain relief.
 14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
 15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.

2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wire way or pathway a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above ceilings by cable supports not more than **30 inches (760 mm)** apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Below each feed point, neatly coil a minimum of **72 inches (1830 mm)** of cable in a coil not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in diameter.

G. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **5 inches (127 mm)**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches (305 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **24 inches (600 mm)**.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)**.

- b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches (305 mm)**.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
- a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of **48 inches (1200 mm)**.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of **5 inches (127 mm)**.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.

- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- F. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

- G. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agencies field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of system described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1) Test wells.
 - 2) Ground rods.
 - 3) Ground rings.
 - 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
 - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Advanced Lightning Technology, Ltd.
 2. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
 3. Dossert; AFL Telecommunications LLC.
 4. ERICO; a brand of nVent.
 5. Fushi Copperweld Inc.
 6. Galvan Industries, Inc.; Electrical Products Division, LLC.
 7. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 8. ILSCO.

9. [O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.](#)
10. [Robbins Lightning, Inc.](#)
11. [Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.](#)
12. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)

2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression or exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.

- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt or socket set screw.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, cast-bronze clamp or copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal two-piece clamp.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with zinc-plated or stainless-steel bolts.
 - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad; **3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m)**.
- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
 - 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least **48 inches (1200 mm)** long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturers recommended material.
- C. Ground Plates: **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned- copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least **30 inches (750 mm)** below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury **12 inches (300 mm)** above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe.
- D. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with more than one continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- E. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers **2 inches (50 mm)** minimum from wall, **6 inches (150 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- F. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so **4 inches (100 mm)** will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from **2 inches (50 mm)** above to **6 inches (150 mm)** below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, no shrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 - 9. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Anti-frost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
 - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare, tinned copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
 - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
 - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.6 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet (450 m) except as follows:
 - 1. Fences within 100 Feet (30 m) of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet (225 m).
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches (460 mm) below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.

- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

3.7 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are **2 inches (50 mm)** below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 - 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least **12 inches (300 mm)** deep, with cover.
 - 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned **bonding** jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than **60 feet (18 m)** apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column or indicated item, extending around the perimeter of building.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 2. Bury ground ring not less than **24 inches (600 mm)** from building's foundation.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of **20 feet (6 m)** of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
1. If concrete foundation is less than **20 feet (6 m)** long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- K. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least **20 feet (6.0 m)** long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by the usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create the required length.
- L. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.

4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- F. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.

4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- I. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.

2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.
1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
 2. Slotted support systems.
 3. Equipment supports.
 4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.
1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.
 2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M or AWS D1.2/D1.2M.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the supported equipment and systems will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - 3. See ASCE/SEI 7, Coefficients for Architectural Component Table and Seismic Coefficients for Mechanical and Electrical Components Table for requirements to be inserted in subparagraph below.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch-** (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - c. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 - d. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - e. Gripple Inc.

- f. [GS Metals Corp.](#)
 - g. [G-Strut.](#)
 - h. [Haydon Corporation.](#)
 - i. [Metal Ties Innovation.](#)
 - j. [MIRO Industries.](#)
 - k. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)
 - l. [Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.](#)
 - m. [Wesanco, Inc.](#)
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel, Plain steel, Stainless steel, Type 304, or Stainless steel, Type 316.
 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)**.
 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded-aluminum channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. in at least one surface.
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Cooper Industries, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Flex-Strut Inc.](#)
 - c. [Haydon Corporation.](#)
 - d. [MKT Metal Manufacturing.](#)
 - e. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)
 - f. [Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.](#)
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Channel Material: 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
 4. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
 5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)**.
 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c., in at least one surface.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
 - d. G-Strut.
 - e. Haydon Corporation.
 - f. Seasafe, Inc.; AMICO, a Gibraltar Industries Company.
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)**.
 4. Fittings and Accessories: Products provided by channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 5. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as those for channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
 6. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel or Stainless-steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti, Inc.
 - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, **Grade A325** (**Grade A325M**).
6. Toggle Bolts: All Stainless-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA 101
 3. NECA 102.
 4. NECA 105.
 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps or single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and IMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete **4 inches (100 mm)** thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts, Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69, or Spring-tension clamps.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.

8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup

painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wire ways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wire ways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior duct banks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wire ways, surface pathways, inner duct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wire ways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- C. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- D. Samples: For wire ways, nonmetallic wire ways, and surface raceways and for each color and texture specified, **12 inches (300 mm)** long.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - b. [Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - c. [Anamet Electrical, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Calconduit.](#)
 - e. [Electri-Flex Company.](#)
 - f. [FSR Inc.](#)
 - g. [Korkap.](#)

- h. [NEC, Inc.](#)
 - i. [Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc \(OMNI\).](#)
 - j. [O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.](#)
 - k. [Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.](#)
 - l. [Perma-Cote.](#)
 - m. [Picoma Industries, Inc.](#)
 - n. [Plasti-Bond.](#)
 - o. [Republic Conduit.](#)
 - p. [Southwire Company.](#)
 - q. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)
 - r. [Topaz Electric; a division of Topaz Lighting Corp.](#)
 - s. [Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.](#)
 - t. [Wheatland Tube Company.](#)
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
5. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
6. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit IMC.
- a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: **0.040 inch** (1 mm), minimum.
7. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
8. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
9. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- B. Metal Fittings:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. [AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - b. [Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - c. [Anamet Electrical, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Calconduit.](#)
 - e. [Electri-Flex Company.](#)
 - f. [FSR Inc.](#)
 - g. [Korkap.](#)
 - h. [NEC, Inc.](#)
 - i. [NewBasis.](#)
 - j. [Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc \(OMNI\).](#)
 - k. [O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.](#)
 - l. [Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.](#)
 - m. [Perma-Cote.](#)
 - n. [Picoma Industries, Inc.](#)
 - o. [Plasti-Bond.](#)
 - p. [Republic Conduit.](#)

- q. [Southwire Company.](#)
 - r. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)
 - s. [Topaz Electric; a division of Topaz Lighting Corp.](#)
 - t. [Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.](#)
 - u. [Wheatland Tube Company.](#)
- 2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 - 5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 - 6. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: Setscrew or compression.
 - 7. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 8. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of **0.040 inch (1 mm)**, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [AFC Cable Systems: a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - b. [Anamet Electrical, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Arcco Corporation.](#)
 - d. [CANTEX INC.](#)
 - e. [CertainTeed Corporation.](#)
 - f. [Champion Fiberglass, Inc.](#)
 - g. [Condux International, Inc.](#)
 - h. [Electri-Flex Company.](#)
 - i. [FRE Composites.](#)
 - j. [Kraloy.](#)
 - k. [Lamson & Sessions.](#)
 - l. [Niedax Inc.](#)
 - m. [RACO; Hubbell.](#)
 - n. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.](#)

4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 2. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
 3. MonoSystems, Inc.
 4. Square D.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 1. Metal wire ways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wire ways as required for complete system.
- D. Wire way Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Allied Moulded Products, Inc.
 2. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
 3. Lamson & Sessions.
 4. Niedax Inc.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wire ways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- D. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.

- E. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wire ways as required for complete system.
- F. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 - d. Wiremold / Legrand.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 - d. Wiremold / Legrand.
- D. Tele-Power Poles:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - b. Panduit Corp.
 - c. Wiremold / Legrand.
 - 2. Material: Galvanized steel with ivory baked-enamel finish.

3. Fittings and Accessories: Dividers, end caps, covers, cutouts, wiring harnesses, devices, mounting materials, and other fittings shall match and mate with tele-power pole as required for complete system.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Adalet.
 2. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
 3. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 4. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
 5. FSR Inc.
 6. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
 7. Hubbell Incorporated.
 8. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 9. Kraloy.
 10. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
 11. MonoSystems, Inc.
 12. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
 13. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 14. Plasti-Bond.
 15. RACO; Hubbell.
 16. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
 17. Stahlin Non-Metallic Enclosures.
 18. Thomas & Betts Corporation; a Member of the ABB Group.
 19. Topaz Electric; a division of Topaz Lighting Corp.
 20. Wiremold / Legrand.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy or aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
 1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
 2. Type: Fully adjustable or Semi-adjustable.
 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round or rectangular.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing **50 lb (23 kg)**. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than **50 lb (23 kg)** shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- I. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing **70 lb (32 kg)**.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- J. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- K. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- L. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- M. Device Box Dimensions: **4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep)**.
- N. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- O. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic or Fiberglass.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- P. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Armorcast Products Company.](#)
 - b. [NewBasis.](#)
 - c. [Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.](#)
 - d. [Oldcastle Precast, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.](#)
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes **12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)** and larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of polymer concrete or reinforced concrete.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Armorcast Products Company.](#)
 - b. [NewBasis.](#)
 - c. [Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.](#)
 - e. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
 - f. [Oldcastle Precast, Inc.](#)
 - g. [Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.](#)
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray.

4. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
5. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
6. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
7. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
8. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
9. Handholes **12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)** and larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC or IMC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC, IMC, EMT.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC or Type EPC-40-PVC.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT or RNC identified for such use.
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC or IMC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT, ENT, or RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC, or IMC.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: **3/4-inch (21-mm)** trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds **120 deg F (49 deg C)**.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
 - B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
 - C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
 - D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
 - E. Keep raceways at least **6 inches (150 mm)** away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within **12 inches (300 mm)** of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within **12 inches (300 mm)** of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than **1-inch (27-mm)** trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum **10-foot (3-m)** intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, GRC or IMC before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- P. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- Q. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to **1-1/4-inch (35mm)** trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on **1-1/2-inch (41-mm)** trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

- R. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- S. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- T. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits **2-inch (53-mm)** trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- U. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200-lb (90-kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- V. Surface Raceways:
 - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum **2-inch (50-mm)** radius control at bend points.
 - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding **48 inches (1200 mm)** and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- W. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- X. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 - 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
 - 5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 - 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **30 deg F (17 deg C)** and that has straight-run length that exceeds **25 feet (7.6 m)**. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed **100 deg F (55 deg C)** and that has straight-run length that exceeds **100 feet (30 m)**.

2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- AA. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches (915 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semi recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- BB. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a rain tight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- EE. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- FF. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- GG. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- HH. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

- II. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete for a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately **12 inches (300 mm)** above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.

- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install Osleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
3. Flexible nonmetallic duct.
4. Duct accessories.
5. Precast concrete handholes.
6. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
7. Fiberglass handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
8. Fiberglass handholes and boxes.
9. High-density plastic boxes.
10. Precast manholes.
11. Cast-in-place manholes.
12. Utility structure accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
 1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
 2. Multiple duct banks.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid (steel) conduit.
- E. Traffic ways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
2. Include duct, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
4. Include underground-line warning tape.
5. Include warning planks.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures:

- a. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories.
- b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
- c. Include reinforcement details.
- d. Include frame and cover design and manhole chimneys.
- e. Include ladder and or step details.
- f. Include grounding details.
- g. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
- h. Include joint details.

2. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:

- a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
- b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
- c. Include cover design.
- d. Include grounding details.
- e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: For duct and duct bank. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.

1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.

- C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators, and associated fasteners in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantity of each item installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission.
- B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.
- C. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches (900 mm) below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- B. Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated GRC.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

- C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 2. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
 4. Calconduit.
 5. Electri-Flex Company.
 6. FSR Inc.
 7. Korkap.
 8. NEC, Inc.
 9. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
 10. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 11. Perma-Cote.
 12. Picoma Industries, Inc.
 13. Plasti-Bond.
 14. Republic Conduit.
 15. Southwire Company.
 16. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 17. Topaz Electric; a division of Topaz Lighting Corp.
 18. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
 19. Wheatland Tube Company.
- D. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type DB-60 PVC and Type DB-120 PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 6 & 8 and ASTM F 512 for direct burial, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 9 by same manufacturer as duct.
- C. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EB-20 PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 6 & 8, ASTM F 512, and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 9 by same manufacturer as duct.
- D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ARNCO Corp.
 2. Beck Manufacturing.
 3. CANTEX INC.
 4. CertainTeed Corporation.
 5. Condux International, Inc.
 6. Crown Line Plastics.
 7. ElecSys, Inc.

8. [Electri-Flex Company.](#)
9. [Endot Industries Inc.](#)
10. [IPEX USA LLC.](#)
11. [Lamson & Sessions.](#)
12. [Manhattan/CDT.](#)
13. [National Pipe & Plastics.](#)
14. [Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc \(OMNI\).](#)
15. [Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.](#)

- E. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC DUCTS

- A. HDPE Duct: Type EPEC-40 HDPE, complying with NEMA TC 7 and UL 651A.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [ARNCO Corp.](#)
 - b. [Carlton; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.](#)
 - c. [National Pipe & Plastics.](#)
 - d. [Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc \(OMNI\).](#)
 - e. [Premier Conduit.](#)
 2. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - b. [CANTEX INC.](#)
 - c. [Carlton; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.](#)
 - d. [IPEX USA LLC.](#)
 - e. [PenCell Plastics.](#)
 - f. [Underground Devices, Inc.](#)
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- C. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches (300 by 600 by 75 mm) in size, manufactured from 6000-psi (41-MPa) concrete.
 - 1. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
 - 2. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) deep letters.

2.5 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Christy Concrete Products.](#)
 - 2. [Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.](#)
 - 3. [Oldcastle Precast, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Rinker Group, Ltd.](#)
 - 5. [Riverton Concrete Products.](#)
 - 6. [Utility Concrete Products, LLC.](#)
 - 7. [Utility Vault Co.](#)
 - 8. [Wausau Tile Inc.](#)
- C. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- D. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
- E. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
- F. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with hinged steel access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 - 1. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
 - 2. Cover Handle: Recessed.
- G. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof aluminum frame with hinged aluminum access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 - 1. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
 - 2. Cover Handle: Recessed.
- H. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- I. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." As indicated for each service.

- J. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 - K. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
 - 1. Extension shall provide increased depth of **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 - 2. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
 - L. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
 - M. Knockout Panels: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching duct, plus an additional **12 inches (300 mm)** vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - 1. Center window location.
 - 2. Knockout panels shall be located no less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - 3. Knockout panel opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct.
 - 4. Knockout panels shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 - 5. Knockout panels shall be **1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm)** thick.
 - N. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - 1. Type and size shall match fittings to duct to be terminated.
 - 2. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching duct and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
 - O. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- 2.6 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER
- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armorcast Products Company.
 - 2. MacLean Highline.
 - 3. NewBasis.
 - 4. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.

5. [Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.](#)
 - C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
 - D. Color: Gray.
 - E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 - F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
 - G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
 - I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 - J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 - K. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
- 2.7 FIBERGLASS HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE FRAME AND COVER
- A. Description: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
 - B. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. [Armorcast Products Company.](#)
 2. [Christy Concrete Products.](#)
 3. [NewBasis.](#)
 4. [Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.](#)
 5. [Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.](#)
 - C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
 - D. Color: Gray.
 - E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." As indicated for each service.
- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Electrical Cables More Than 600 V: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, concrete-encased unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, concrete-encased unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Bored Underground Duct: Type EPEC-40-HDPE unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths Walks and Driveways: Type EPC-40 PVC RNC, encased in reinforced concrete.
- G. Stub-ups: Concrete-encased GRC.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

- A. Cast-in-Place Manhole Installation:
 - 1. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth-troweled finish.
 - 2. Knockouts for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels **1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm)** thick, arranged as indicated.
 - 3. Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete, formwork, and reinforcement.
- B. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
 - 3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1-inch (25-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevations:
 - 1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least **15 inches (375 mm)** below finished grade.

2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and traffic ways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
 3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, Insert depth of frost line below grade at Project site below grade.
 4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and traffic ways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
 5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
- D. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
- E. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.
1. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
 2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings, to support cast-iron frame to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for frame to chimney.
- F. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071353 "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing." Section 071354 "Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing." After duct has been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- G. Damp proofing: Apply damp proofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Damp proofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071113 "Bituminous Damp proofing." After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, damp proof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Damp proof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- H. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and **able** arms, and insulators, **as** required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
- I. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.
- J. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than **3-7/8 inches (97 mm)** for manholes and **2 inches (50 mm)** for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.
- 3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE
- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and traffic ways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, non-deliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
 - 1. Concrete: **3000 psi (20 kPa)**, 28-day strength, complying with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
 - 2. Dimensions: **10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep)**.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
 - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum **12-inch- (300-mm-)** long mandrel equal to duct size minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
 - 3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.
 - 1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
 - 2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260543

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral water stop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; **0.0239-inch (0.6-mm)** minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.
- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than **50 inches (1270 mm)** and with no side larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.052 inch (1.3 mm)**.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter **50 inches (1270 mm)** or more and one or more sides larger than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.138 inch (3.5 mm)**.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Advance Products & Systems, Inc.](#)
 - b. [CALPICO, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
 - d. [Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Proco Products, Inc.](#)
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or Nitrile (Buna N) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, water stop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber water stop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. HOLDRITE.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position water stop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260548.16 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Restraint channel bracings.
2. Restraint cables.
3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind forces required to select seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
3. Seismic- and Wind-Restraint Details:
- a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints. Electrical components include:
1. Control and monitoring panels.
 2. Generators.
 3. Luminaires.
 4. Motor control centers.
 5. Panelboards.
 6. Photovoltaic system components.
 7. Substations.
 8. Switchboards.
 9. Switchgear.
 10. Transformers.
 11. Unit substations.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Basic Wind Speed: 150.
 - 2. Building Classification Category: IV.
 - 3. Minimum **10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m)** multiplied by maximum area of component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: A.
 - 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: I.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 1.5.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: 1.0.
 - 3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second) : 10%.
 - 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period: 10%.

2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.

4. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.

- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 2. Gripple Inc.
 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized or ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
 4. TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 2. Hilti, Inc.
 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 4. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Hilti, Inc.
 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and **seismic**-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods caused by seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
 - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds **0.125 inch (3.2 mm)**.
 - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid pre-stressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wire ways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post-connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 - 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 - 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 - 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
- C. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 260548.16

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.

- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase-and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White.
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Bare copper Green.

7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Warning Label Colors:
 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR **36 INCHES** (915 MM)."
- F. Equipment Identification Labels:
 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Champion America.
 - c. emedco.
 - d. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - e. HellermannTyton.
 - f. LEM Products Inc.
 - g. Marking Services, Inc.
 - h. Panduit Corp.
 - i. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pre-tensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. HellermannTyton.

- c. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Panduit Corp.](#)
 - e. [Seton Identification Products.](#)
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, polyester or vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [A'n D Cable Products.](#)
 - b. [Brady Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Brother International Corporation.](#)
 - d. [emedco.](#)
 - e. [Grafoplast Wire Markers.](#)
 - f. [Ideal Industries, Inc.](#)
 - g. [LEM Products Inc.](#)
 - h. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 - i. [Panduit Corp.](#)
 - j. [Seton Identification Products.](#)
 2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Polyester or Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [A'n D Cable Products.](#)
 - b. [Brady Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Brother International Corporation.](#)
 - d. [emedco.](#)
 - e. [Grafoplast Wire Markers.](#)
 - f. [HellermannTyton.](#)
 - g. [Ideal Industries, Inc.](#)
 - h. [LEM Products Inc.](#)
 - i. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 - j. [Panduit Corp.](#)
 - k. [Seton Identification Products.](#)
 2. Minimum Nominal Size:

- a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
- b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
- c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pre-tensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. HellermannTyton.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Panduit Corp.

2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Champion America.
 - c. HellermannTyton.
 - d. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - e. Marking Services, Inc.
 - f. Panduit Corp.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Brady Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Carlton Industries, LP.](#)
 - c. [emedco.](#)
 - d. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
- C. Tape and Stencil: **4-inch-** (100-mm-) wide black stripes on **10-inch** (250-mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and are **12 inches** (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [HellermannTyton.](#)
 - b. [LEM Products Inc.](#)
 - c. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Seton Identification Products.](#)
- D. Floor Marking Tape: **2-inch-** (50-mm-) wide, **5-mil** (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Carlton Industries, LP.](#)
 - b. [Seton Identification Products.](#)
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Brady Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Ideal Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [LEM Products Inc.](#)
 - d. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Reef Industries, Inc.](#)
 - f. [Seton Identification Products.](#)
 2. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications **utility** lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 3. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.

- b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
 - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
4. Tag: Type I:
- a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, **compounded** for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: **3 inches** (75 mm).
 - c. Thickness: **4 mils** (0.1 mm).
 - d. Weight: **18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft.** (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
 - e. Tensile according to ASTM D882: **30 lbf** (133.4 N) and **2500 psi** (17.2 MPa).
5. Tag: Type II:
- a. Multilayer laminate, consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, **compounded** for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: **3 inches** (75 mm).
 - c. Thickness: **12 mils** (0.3 mm).
 - d. Weight: **36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft.** (17.6 kg/100 sq. m).
 - e. Tensile according to ASTM D882: **400 lbf** (1780 N) and **11,500 psi** (79.2 MPa).
6. Tag: Type ID:
- a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: **3 inches** (75 mm).
 - c. Overall Thickness: **5 mils** (0.125 mm).
 - d. Foil Core Thickness: **0.35 mil** (0.00889 mm).
 - e. Weight: **28 lb/1000 sq. ft.** (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
 - f. Tensile according to ASTM D882: **70 lbf** (311.3 N) and **4600 psi** (31.7 MPa).
7. Tag: Type IID:
- a. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: **3 inches** (75 mm).
 - c. Overall Thickness: **8 mils** (0.2 mm).
 - d. Foil Core Thickness: **0.35 mil** (0.00889 mm).
 - e. Weight: **34 lb/1000 sq. ft.** (16.6 kg/100 sq. m).
 - f. Tensile according to ASTM D882: **300 lbf** (1334 N) and **12,500 psi** (86.1 MPa).
- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be **1 inch** (25 mm).

2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, **2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm)**, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. emedco.
 - d. Marking Services, Inc.
 - e. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, **0.023 inch (0.58 mm)** thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory screened permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. emedco.
 - d. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - e. LEM Products Inc.
 - f. Marking Services, Inc.
 - g. Panduit Corp.
 - h. Seton Identification Products.
- C. Write-on Tags:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Seton Identification Products.
 2. Polyester Tags: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.7 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Carlton Industries, LP.](#)
 - b. [Champion America.](#)
 - c. [emedco.](#)
 - d. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, **punched** or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 3. **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting.
 4. Nominal Size: **7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm)**.
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Brady Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Champion America.](#)
 - c. [emedco.](#)
 - d. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with **0.0396-inch (1-mm)** galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 3. **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting.
 4. Nominal Size: **10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm)**.
- C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Brady Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Carlton Industries, LP.](#)
 - c. [emedco.](#)
 - d. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 2. Engraved legend.
 3. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, minimum **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
 - b. For signs larger than **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting or Self-adhesive.

- e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [HellermannTyton](#).
 - 2. [Ideal Industries, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Marking Services, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Panduit Corp.](#)
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
 - 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
 - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
 - 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
 - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at **73 Deg F (23 Deg C)** according to ASTM D638: **7000 psi (48.2 MPa)**.
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C)**.
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer load shedding.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
 3. "UPS."
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- Q. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of **6 inches (150 mm)** where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- U. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- V. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- W. Underground Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope **exceeds 16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

X. Metal Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.

Y. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.

Z. Write-on Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.

AA. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on minimum **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

BB. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

CC. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

DD. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high, black letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 30-foot (10-m) maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Vinyl wraparound labels.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels vinyl tape applied in bands.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- G. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use vinyl wraparound labels self-adhesive vinyl tape to identify the phase.
 - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- H. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase and a separate tag with the circuit designation.

- I. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- J. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes or self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
- K. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.
- L. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- M. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- N. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
 - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches (300 mm) of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 - 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 - 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- O. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape or tape and stencil to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- P. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- Q. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
 - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- R. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- S. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels.

- T. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- U. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Switchgear.
 - e. Switchboards.
 - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
 - g. Substations.
 - h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
 - i. Motor-control centers.
 - j. Enclosed switches.
 - k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - l. Enclosed controllers.
 - m. Variable-speed controllers.
 - n. Push-button stations.
 - o. Power-transfer equipment.
 - p. Contactors.
 - q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
 - r. Battery-inverter units.
 - s. Battery racks.
 - t. Power-generating units.
 - u. Monitoring and control equipment.
 - v. UPS equipment.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.
- B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - 1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
 - 2) Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
 - c. Short-circuit study data files.
 - d. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
 - 1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.
 - 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
- F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
 - 2. A member company of NETA.
 - 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. CGI CYME.
 - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
 - 3. ESA Inc.
 - 4. Operation Technology, Inc.
 - 5. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 - 6. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.

1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations and ratings.
 6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
 7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document, separate from one-line diagram.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
 1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
 2. Power sources available.
 3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
 4. Conductors.
 5. Transformer data.

G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:

1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.

2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
 - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.

3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
 3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. Qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be as defined by NFPA 70E.

- B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
 6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
 9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 10. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 11. Derating factors.

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
 2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.

- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
 - 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- I. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION 260573.13

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.
 - 1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.
- B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- E. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power System Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final protective device coordination study.
 - c. Coordination study data files.
 - d. List of all protective device settings.
 - e. Time-current coordination curves.
 - f. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:
 - 1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
 - 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
 - 2. A member company of NETA.
 - 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
 - 1. Optional Features:

- a. Arcing faults.
- b. Simultaneous faults.
- c. Explicit negative sequence.
- d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.2 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
 6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
 7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
 - a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- D. Protective Device Coordination Study:
 1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
 - a. Phase and Ground Relays:
 - 1) Device tag.
 - 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
 - 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
 - b. Circuit Breakers:
 - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
 - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
 - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
 - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
 - c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.

- E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
 2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
 3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
 4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
 - a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
 - b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.
 - c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
 - d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
 - e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
 - f. Cables and conductors damage curves.
 - g. Ground-fault protective devices.
 - h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
 - i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
 - j. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
 5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
 6. Maintain maximum achievable selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads on series-rated devices.
 7. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
 8. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
 3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. Qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be as defined by NFPA 70E.
- B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
 5. Full-load current of all loads.
 6. Voltage level at each bus.
 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
 9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
 12. Maximum demands from service meters.
 13. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
 14. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 15. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 16. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, cable construction, metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 17. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:

- a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
- b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
- c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
- d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
- e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
- f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
- g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
- h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
- i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
- j. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
- k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
 2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:

- a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- H. Motor Protection:
1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
 2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.
- I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.
- J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.
- K. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- M. Protective Device Evaluation:
1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
 2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
 3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.
 4. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.
- 3.4 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY
- A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:

1. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
2. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of load buses.
3. Prepare load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

3.5 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY

- A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of motor starting on the power system stability.
- B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141, and, and voltage sags so as not to affect operation of other utilization equipment on system supplying the motor.

3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under the "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.
- B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.
- C. Testing and adjusting shall be by a full-time employee of the Field Adjusting Agency, who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:
 1. Acquaint personnel in fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
 2. Hand-out and explain the coordination study objectives, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting time-current coordination curves.

3. For Owner's maintenance staff certified as NETA ETT-Certified Technicians Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III Technicians, teach how to adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION 260573.16

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form:
 - 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
 - 3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
 - 1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
 - 2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
 - 3. For Field Adjusting Agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data:
 - 1. Provide maintenance procedures in equipment manuals according to requirements in NFPA 70E.
 - 2. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
 - 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
- G. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
 - 2. A member company of NETA.
 - 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. CGI CYME.
 - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
 - 3. ESA Inc.
 - 4. Operation Technology, Inc.
 - 5. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 - 6. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:
 - 1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in the report:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
 - 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
 - 2. Protective device clearing time.
 - 3. Duration of arc.
 - 4. Arc-flash boundary.
 - 5. Restricted approach boundary.
 - 6. Limited approach boundary.
 - 7. Working distance.
 - 8. Incident energy.
 - 9. Hazard risk category.

10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

- I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a **3.5-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm)** self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.
- B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
1. Location designation.
 2. Nominal voltage.
 3. Protection boundaries.
 - a. Arc-flash boundary.
 - b. Restricted approach boundary.
 - c. Limited approach boundary.
 4. Arc flash PPE category.
 5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
 6. Available incident energy.
 7. Working distance.
 8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis or obtain results from another source.

1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
 2. Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
 2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to IEEE 1584 recommendations.
 3. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to NFPA 70E recommendations.
 4. Calculate arc-flash energy with the utility contribution at a minimum and assume no motor contribution.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240 V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.
- F. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
 3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.
- B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
 5. Full-load current of all loads.
 6. Voltage level at each bus.
 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
 9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
 12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
 13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 14. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 15. Medium-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, conductor material, conductor construction and metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.4 LABELING

- A. Apply one **arc**-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment and on side or rear covers with accessible live parts and hinged doors or removable plates for each equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.
- B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:
 - 1. Motor-control center.
 - 2. Low-voltage switchboard.
 - 3. Switchgear.
 - 4. Medium-voltage switch.
 - 5. Medium voltage transformers
 - 6. Low voltage transformers.
 - 7. Panelboard and safety switch over 250 V.
 - 8. Applicable panelboard and safety switch under 250 V.
 - 9. Control panel.
- C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.
 - 1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
 - 2. Indicate protection level required.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- A. Install arc-flash warning labels under the direct supervision and control of Power System Analysis Specialist.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION 260573.19

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
6. Digital timer light switches.
7. High-bay occupancy sensors.
8. Extreme temperature occupancy sensors.
9. Outdoor motion sensors.
10. Lighting contactors.
11. Emergency shunt relays.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
 - a. Occupancy sensors.
 - b. Vacancy sensors.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 - 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Control modules.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media. Provide names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
 - 3. Device address list.
 - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
 - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Invensys Controls.
4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
5. NSi Industries LLC.
6. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and application.
2. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
3. Programs: Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
4. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program on selected channels.
5. Astronomic Time: Selected channels.
6. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
7. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

C. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
3. Astronomic time dial.
4. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
5. Skip-a-day mode.
6. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

4. [NSi Industries LLC.](#)
 5. [TE Connectivity Ltd.](#)
- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST or DPST dry contacts rated for 1000 W incandescent, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: **1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux)**, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
 7. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting four Insert number RJ45 inputs with two outputs rated for 20-A incandescent or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 16-A LED at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. With integral current monitoring
 - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 - c. Plenum rated.

2.3 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING SWITCHING CONTROLS

- A. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. [Cooper Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. [Eaton.](#)
 3. [Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.](#)
 4. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 5. [Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.](#)
 6. [NSi Industries LLC.](#)
 7. [Sensor Switch, Inc.](#)
 8. [TE Connectivity Ltd.](#)
 9. [WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.](#)
- B. Description: System operates indoor lighting.
- C. Sequence of Operation: As daylight increases, the lights are turned off at a predetermined level. As daylight decreases, the lights are turned on at a predetermined level.
1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:

- a. When no daylight is present.
 - b. When significant daylight is present (target level).
 - c. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
- D. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with integrated power pack, that detects changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- E. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate power pack mounted on luminaire, that detects changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
 3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated power pack, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered by the power pack.
 4. Sensor Output: Digital signal compatible with power pack.
 5. Sensor type: Open loop.
 6. Zone: Multi.
 7. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. LED status lights to indicate load status.
 - b. Plenum rated.
 8. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting 4 RJ45 inputs with two outputs rated for 20-A incandescent LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 16-A or LED at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. With integral current monitoring
 - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 - c. Plenum rated.
 9. General Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 10 to 200 fc (108 to 2152 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 10. Atrium Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 100 to 1000 fc (1080 to 10 800 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 11. Skylight Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1000 to 10,000 fc (10 800 to 108 000 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 12. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling.
 13. Set-Point Adjustment: Equip with deadband adjustment of 25, 50, and 75 percent above the "on" set point, or provide with separate adjustable "on" and "off" set points.
 14. Test Mode: User selectable, overriding programmed time delay to allow settings check.
 15. Control Load Status: User selectable to confirm that load wiring is correct.
 16. Indicator: Two digital displays to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.

2.4 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. Deep Roof Lighting.
 3. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
 4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 6. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.
- B. Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, the lights are dimmed.
1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
 - a. When no daylight is present (target level).
 - b. When significant daylight is present.
 2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
 - a. Initial setup tool.
 - b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with integrated power pack mounted on luminaire, to detect changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Sensor Output: 0- to 10-V dc to operate luminaires. Sensor is powered by controller unit.
 3. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc (120 to 640 lux).
- E. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
1. LED status lights to indicate load status.
 2. Plenum rated.
- F. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting 4 RJ45 inputs with two outputs rated for 20-A incandescent LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 16-A LED at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
1. With integral current monitoring
 - a. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.

- 1) Plenum rated.

2.5 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Bryant Electric.
2. Cooper Industries, Inc.
3. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
4. Intermatic, Inc.
5. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
7. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
8. NSi Industries LLC.
9. Philips Lighting Controls.
10. RAB Lighting.
11. Sensor Switch, Inc.
12. Square D.
13. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Integrated power pack.
4. Hardwired connection to switch and BAS.
5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Operation:
 - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
7. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A Sensor is powered from the power pack.
8. Power: Line voltage.
9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
10. Mounting:

- a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a **1/2-inch (13-mm)** knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from **2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux)**; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than **36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm)**, and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than **12 inches (305 mm)** in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of **12 inches/s (305 mm/s)**.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96-inch- (2440-mm-)** high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of **1000 square feet (110 square meters)** when mounted **48 inches (1200 mm)** above finished floor.

2.6 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Bryant Electric.
 2. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 3. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
 4. Intermatic, Inc.
 5. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 7. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 8. NSi Industries LLC.
 9. Philips Lighting Controls.
 10. RAB Lighting.
 11. Sensor Switch, Inc.
 12. Square D.
 13. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.

2.7 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Invensys Controls.
4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
5. NSi Industries LLC.
6. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Description: Combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting control unit. Switchbox-mounted, backlit LCD display, with selectable time interval in 10 minute increments.

1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 amps at 277-V ac for LED, and 1/4 horsepower at 120-V ac.
2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
3. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage Dual voltage - 120 and 277 V.
4. Color: White.
5. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.8 HIGH-BAY OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.

B. Description: Solid-state unit. The unit is designed to operate with the lamp and ballasts indicated.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Operation: Turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and to half-power when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights to half-power that is adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 16 minutes.
3. Continuous Lamp Monitoring: When lamps are dimmed continuously for 24 hours, automatically turn lamps on to full power for 15 minutes for every 24 hours of continuous dimming.

4. Power: Line voltage.
 5. Operating Ambient Conditions: 32 to 149 deg F (0 to 65 deg C).
 6. Mounting: Threaded pipe.
 7. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 8. Detector Technology: PIR.
 9. Power and dimming control from the luminaire ballast that has been modified to include the dimming capacitor and MyzerPORT option.
- C. Detector Coverage: User selectable by interchangeable PIR lenses, suitable for mounting heights from 12 to 50 feet (3.7 to 15.2 m).
- D. Accessories: Obtain manufacturer's installation and maintenance kit with laser alignment tool for sensor positioning and power port connectors.

2.9 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Lighting Control and Design.
 2. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.
- B. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic **switching** contacts; complying with UL 924.
1. Coil Rating: 120 V.

2.10 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multi-conductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multi-conductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate lighting control devices and perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control systems specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 262413 - SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Surge protection devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.
7. Identification.
8. Mimic bus.

- B. Related Requirements

1. Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component.

1. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.

6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
 7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
 10. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
 11. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal:
1. For arc-flash hazard analysis.
 2. For arc-flash labels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
- b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
- c. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no less than one of each size and type.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service to prevent condensation.
- C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NECA 400.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.
- B. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- C. Unusual Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect Construction Manager Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's Construction Manager's Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace switchboard enclosures, buswork, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and factory installed interconnection wiring that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's agrees to repair or replace surge protection devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156.
 - 2. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.2 SWITCHBOARDS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Eaton.](#)
 - 2. [General Electric Company.](#)
 - 3. [Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.](#)
 - 4. [Square D; by Schneider Electric.](#)
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- E. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.
- G. Comply with UL 891.
- H. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
 - 1. Main Devices: Panel mounted.
 - 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
 - 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- I. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboards:
 - 1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
 - 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
 - 3. Section Alignment: Front aligned.
- J. Front- and Rear-Accessible Switchboards:
 - 1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
 - 2. Branch Devices: Panel and fixed, individually mounted.
 - 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- K. Nominal System Voltage: 208Y/120 V.
- L. Main-Bus Continuous: 2000 A.
- M. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- N. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- O. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
- P. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R.
 - 1. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard color; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating.

2. Enclosure: Flat roof; bolt-on rear covers for each section, with provisions for padlocking.
 3. Doors: Personnel door at each end of aisle, minimum width of **30 inches (762 mm)**; opening outwards; with panic hardware and provisions for pad locking. At least one door shall be sized to permit the largest single switchboard section to pass through without disassembling doors, hinges, or switchboard section.
 4. Accessories: LED luminaires, ceiling mounted; wired to a three-way light switch at each end of aisle; ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) duplex receptacle; emergency battery pack luminaire installed on wall of aisle midway between personnel doors.
 5. Walk-in Aisle Heating and Ventilating:
 - a. Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), wall or ceiling mounted, with integral thermostat and disconnect and with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **40 deg F (5 deg C)** with outside design temperature of **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)**.
 - b. Factory-installed exhaust fan with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **100 deg F (38 deg C)** with outside design temperature of **90 deg F (32 deg C)**.
 - c. Ventilating openings complete with replaceable fiberglass air filters.
 - d. Thermostat: Single stage; wired to control heat and exhaust fan.
 6. Power for Space Heaters, Ventilation, Lighting, and Receptacle: Include a control-power transformer, with spare capacity of 25 percent, within the switchboard. Supply voltage shall be 120/208 V ac.
 7. Power for space heaters, ventilation, lighting, and receptacle provided by a remote source.
- Q. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.
- R. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.
- S. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.
 1. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point.
 2. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in switchboard.
- T. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment shall contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, a neutral bus with disconnecting link, a grounding electrode conductor terminal, and a main bonding jumper.
- U. Utility Metering Compartment: Barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealable door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
- V. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current

transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.

- W. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.
- X. Removable, Hinged Rear Doors and Compartment Covers: Secured by captive thumb screws, for access to rear interior of switchboard.
- Y. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
- Z. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:
 - 1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
 - 2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
 - 3. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
 - 4. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
 - 5. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.
- AA. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right when viewed from the front of the switchboard.
 - 2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-plated.
 - 3. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
 - 4. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
 - 5. Tin-plated aluminum feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
 - 6. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
 - 7. Ground Bus: **1/4-by-2-inch- (6-by-50-mm-)** or Minimum-size required by UL 891, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors.
 - 8. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
 - 9. Disconnect Links:
 - a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
 - b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service equipment or separately derived systems.

10. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
 11. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical or compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
 12. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
- BB. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.
- CC. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.
- DD. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.3 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
 2. Eaton.
 3. General Electric Company.
 4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 5. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.
- C. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1.
- D. Features and Accessories:
1. Integral disconnect switch.
 2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 3. Indicator light display for protection status.
 4. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 5. Surge counter.
- E. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 200 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

- F. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - 1. Line to Neutral: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - 3. Line to Line: 1000 V for 208Y/120 V.
- G. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - 1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 1000 V.
 - 3. Line to Line: 1000 V.
- H. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.
- I. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long and short time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
 - 6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 - 7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 - 8. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.

- b. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
 - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 - f. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - i. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 80 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
- 1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
 - 2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
 - 3. Full-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Time adjustments for long- and short-time pickup.
 - c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.
 - 4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 - 5. Remote trip indication and control.
 - 6. Communication Capability: Web enabled integral Ethernet communication module and embedded Web server with factory-configured Web pages (HTML file format). Provide functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - 7. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - 8. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.
- C. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Boltswitch, Inc.
 - b. Eaton.
 - c. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - d. Square D.
 2. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
 3. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.
 - a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
 - b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
 4. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
 6. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.
 - a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
 - c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
 - d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).
 7. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.
- D. High-Pressure, Butt-Type Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses butt-type contacts and a spring-charged mechanism to produce and maintain high-pressure contact when switch is closed.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. General Electric Company.
 2. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
 3. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

- a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
 - b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
4. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
 6. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.
 - a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
 - c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
 - d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).
 7. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.
- E. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- F. Fuses are specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."

2.5 INSTRUMENTATION

- A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
1. Potential Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 120 V, 60 Hz, tapped secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
 2. Current Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound type; single secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
 3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
 4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.
- B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:

- a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - e. Megavars: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
 - h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 1 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
 - i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 1 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
 - j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semi flush mounted in instrument compartment door.
- C. Analog Meters:
1. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square flush or semi flush, with anti-parallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.
- D. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.
- E. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.
1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
 2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.
- F. Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.
- G. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:
1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
 2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
 3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
 4. Potential indicating lamps.
 5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
 6. Four-dial clock register.
 7. Integral demand indicator.
 8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
 9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
 10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
 11. Semi flush mounted case with matching cover.
 12. Appropriate multiplier tag.
- H. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Suitable for use with switchboard watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
3. Cyclometer.
4. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
5. Positive chart drive mechanism.
6. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
7. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
8. Capable of indicating and recording five-minute integrated demand of totalized system.

2.6 CONTROL POWER

- A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.
- B. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.
- C. Control Circuits: 24-V dc.
- D. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.
- E. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
- F. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.
- C. Portable Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Floor-supported, roller-based, elevating carriage arranged for movement of circuit breakers in and out of compartments for present and future circuit breakers.
- D. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.
- E. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

- F. Mounting Accessories: For anchors, mounting channels, bolts, washers, and other mounting accessories, comply with requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" or manufacturer's instructions.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on a photoengraved nameplate.
 - 1. Nameplate: At least **0.032-inch- (0.813-mm-)** thick anodized aluminum, located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.
- B. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on an engraved laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate.
 - 1. Nameplate: At least **0.0625-inch- (1.588 mm-)** thick laminated plastic (Gravoply), located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.
- C. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.
- D. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.
- E. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components complete with lettered designations.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NECA 400.
 - 1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps following manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not furnished.
 - 3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
 - 4. Install temporary heating during storage per manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect the performance of the equipment.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NECA 400.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, **4-inch (100-mm)** nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install conduits entering underneath the switchboard, entering under the vertical section where the conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with the concrete base. Extend **2 inches (50-mm)** above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch (450-mm)** centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
 - 6. Anchor switchboard to building structure at the top of the switchboard if required or recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Install spare-fuse cabinet.
- I. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Section 262500 "Enclosed Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Bond conduits entering underneath the switchboard to the equipment ground bus with a bonding conductor sized per NFPA 70.
- D. Support and secure conductors within the switchboard according to NFPA 70.
- E. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Acceptance Testing:
 - a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit. Open control and metering circuits within the

- switchboard, and remove neutral connection to surge protection and other electronic devices prior to insulation test. Reconnect after test.
- b. Test continuity of each circuit.
2. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment per NFPA 70.
 3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 5. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- ### 3.6 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
 - B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated. As specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- ### 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

END OF SECTION 262413

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:

- 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding **minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C)** to **plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C)**.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding **6600 feet (2000 m)**.

- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

- 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
- 2. Altitude not exceeding **6600 feet (2000 m)**.

- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

- 1. Notify Architect Construction Manager Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
- 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's Construction Manager's Owner's written permission.
- 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X,.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
 - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 - 7. Finishes:

- a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Load Centers: Shall be provided with white factory finish.**
 - c. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
 - d. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
- G. Incoming Mains:
1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
 - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
 - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
 5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
 6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
 7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression or Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.

7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression or Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.
- L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.
1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.
- M. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 - 1. For doors more than **36 inches (914 mm)** high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
- H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically or mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 - 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
 - 2. External Control-Power Source: 24-V control circuit.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically or mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
 2. External Control-Power Source: 24-V control circuit.
- F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- G. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.
- H. Column-Type Panelboards: Single row of overcurrent devices with narrow gutter extension and overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.
1. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.5 LOAD CENTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Eaton.
 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

2.6 ELECTRONIC-GRADE PANELBOARDS

- A. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral SPD; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 and UL 1449 after installing SPD.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- D. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- F. SPD.

1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 1200 V.
4. SCCR: Equal to the SCCR of the panelboard in which installed or exceed 100 kA.
5. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

G. Buses:

1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

2.7 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Eaton.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.

- c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
- a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Compression or Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - h. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - i. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 - j. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
 - k. Auxiliary Contacts: One, SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - l. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
 - m. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - n. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.

- o. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
 - p. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - q. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- 1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
 - 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
 - b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.
 - c. Auxiliary Contacts: One normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.9 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

- F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- G. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- I. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports **1 1/4 inch (32 mm)** in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- N. Stub four **1-inch (25 mm)** empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four **1-inch (25 mm)** empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- P. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated and as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
 - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
2. USB receptacles.
3. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
4. SPD receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
5. Hospital-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
6. Hazardous (classified) location receptacles.
7. Twist-locking receptacles.
8. Pendant cord-connector devices.
9. Cord and plug sets.
10. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
11. Decorator-style devices, 20 A.
12. Occupancy sensors.
13. Digital timer light switches.
14. Residential devices.
15. Wall-box dimmers.
16. Wall plates.
17. Floor service fittings.
18. Poke-through assemblies.
19. Prefabricated multi-outlet assemblies.
20. Service poles.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

G. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Service/Power Poles: One for every 10, but no less than one.

2. Floor Service-Outlet Assemblies: One for every 10, but no less than one.

3. Poke-Through, Fire-Rated Closure Plugs: One for every five floor service outlets installed, but no fewer than two.

4. SPD Receptacles: One for every 10 of each type installed, but no fewer than two of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. RoHS compliant.

- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White or As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Electrical System: Red.
 - 3. SPD Devices: Blue.
 - 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: As specified above, with orange triangle on face.
- H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 - 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 - 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 - 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
- B. Isolated-Ground Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)

- c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
- C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- D. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.
- E. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)

- b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.3 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 15 A

A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\)](#).
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems](#).
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\)](#).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- D. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\)](#).
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems](#).
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\)](#).
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.
- E. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\)](#).
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems](#).
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\)](#).
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.4 USB RECEPTACLES

A. USB Charging Receptacles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Single-piece, rivet-less, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
3. USB Receptacles: Dual and quad, USB Type A, 5 V dc, and 2.1 A per receptacle (minimum).
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1310 and USB 3.0 devices.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex and USB Charging Receptacles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Single-piece, rivet-less, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the line voltage receptacle.
3. Line Voltage Receptacles: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding; NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. USB Receptacles: Dual USB Type A, 5 V dc, and 2.1 A per receptacle (minimum).
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 1310, USB 3.0 devices, and FS W-C-596.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

2.5 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.

3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.6 SPD RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex SPD Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral SPD in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground. LED indicator light.
 3. SPD Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 V and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
 4. Active SPD Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
 5. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 6. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, UL 1449, and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground Duplex SPD Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral SPD in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground. LED indicator light.
3. SPD Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 V and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
4. Active SPD Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
5. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
6. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
7. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 1449, and FS W-C-596.

2.7 HOSPITAL-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Hospital-Grade, Single Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)

- c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Single-piece, rivet-less, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 Supplement sd and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- B. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Single-piece, rivet-less, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 Supplement sd and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- C. Hospital-Grade, Isolated-Ground, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Premise Wiring.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 Supplement sd and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- D. Hospital-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Premise Wiring.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.
- E. Hospital-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, Duplex (125 V, 20 A) and USB Charging Receptacles:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Single-piece, rivet-less, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the line voltage receptacle.
 3. Line Voltage Receptacles: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding, NEMA Configuration 5-20R.
 4. USB Receptacles: Dual, USB Type A, 5 V dc, and 2.1 A per receptacle (minimum).
 5. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 498 Supplement sd, UL 1310, and FS W-C-596.
 6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article.

2.8 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 120 V, 20 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L5-20R.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

B. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 250 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L6-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

C. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, 277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L7-20R.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

D. Twist-Lock, Isolated-Ground, Single Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Grounding: Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration L5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

2.9 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector, heavy-duty grade.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - 2. Ericson.
 - 3. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - 4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 5. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- C. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configurations L5-20P and L5-20R.
- D. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
- E. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.
- F. Standards: Comply with FS W-C-596.

2.10 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
- B. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
- C. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.11 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 15 A

- A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- B. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
 3. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- C. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- D. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- E. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Illuminated when switch is on.

3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- F. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is on.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- G. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- H. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- I. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - c. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- 2.12 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A
- A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- B. Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- C. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

D. Antimicrobial, Double-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

E. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

F. Antimicrobial, Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

G. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- H. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Illuminated when switch is on.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- I. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is on.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- J. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- K. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- L. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.13 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES, 15 A

- A. Decorator Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
- B. Decorator, Tamper-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A,:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- C. Decorator, Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.
- D. Decorator Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Comply with UL 20.
- E. Decorator Single-Pole Lighted Switches,120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 2. Description: Square face illuminated when circuit is switched off.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
- F. Decorator, Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

2.14 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES, 20 A

A. Decorator Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

B. Decorator Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Decorator, Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)

- c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.
- D. Decorator Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Comply with UL 20.
- E. Decorator Single-Pole Lighted Switches,120/277 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Square face illuminated when circuit is switched off.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
- F. Decorator, Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

2.15 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall Switch Sensor Light Switch, Dual Technology:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual (ultrasonic and passive infrared) technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Adjustable time delay of 10 minutes.
6. Able to be locked to Automatic and Manual-On mode.
7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).
8. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
9. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
10. Connections: Integral wireless networking.

B. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Passive Infrared:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using passive infrared technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Connections: Hard wired.
6. Connections: Wireless.
7. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
8. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
9. Adjustable time delay of 10 minutes.
10. Able to be locked to Automatic and Manual-On mode.
11. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).

C. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Ultrasonic:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using ultrasonic technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
6. Connections: Integral wireless networking.
7. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
8. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
9. Adjustable time delay of 10 minutes.
10. Able to be locked to Automatic and Manual-On mode.
11. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).

2.16 TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

A. Digital Timer Light Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting-control unit, with backlit digital display, with selectable time interval in 10-minute increments.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Integral relay for connection to BAS.

2.17 RESIDENTIAL DEVICES

A. Residential-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 943 and UL 1699.
- B. Residential-Grade, Tamper-Resistant, AFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 943 and UL 1699.
- C. Residential-Grade, Tamper-Resistant Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
- D. Weather- and Tamper-Resistant Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. [Eaton \(Arrow Hart\).](#)
 - b. [Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.](#)
 - c. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 - d. [Pass & Seymour/Legrand \(Pass & Seymour\).](#)
 2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 3. Feed-through connectors.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

5. Marked as "Weather Resistant."

E. Fan-Speed Controls:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Modular, 120-V ac, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 1917.
4. Continuously adjustable slider, 5 A.
5. Three-speed adjustable slider, 1.5 A.

F. Telephone Outlet:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Single RJ-11 jack for terminating Category 3, balanced twisted pair cable complying with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
3. Description: Single RJ-11 jack for terminating Category 3, balanced twisted pair cable complying with Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1863.

G. Combination Telephone and Coaxial Outlet:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Single RJ-11 jack for terminating Category 3, twisted pair cable complying with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" and a single BNC connector for terminating coaxial cable.
3. Description: Single RJ-11 jack for terminating Category 3, twisted pair cable complying with Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" and a single BNC

connector for terminating coaxial cable complying with Section 271533
"Communications Coaxial Horizontal Cabling."

4. Standards: Comply with UL 1863.

2.18 DIMMERS

A. Wall-Box Dimmers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Modular, full-wave, solid-state dimmer switch with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
3. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1472.
5. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
 - a. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "off."
 - b. .
6. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.
7. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.19 WALL PLATES

A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.

B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting **0.035-inch- (1-mm-)** thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.
- D. Antimicrobial Cover Plates:
 - 1. Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
 - 2. Tarnish resistant.

2.20 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Flush-Type Floor Service Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- 2. Description: Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used, with cover flush with finished floor.
- 3. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
- 4. Service Plate and Cover: Rectangular, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
- 5. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Data Communication Outlet: Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 jacks for twisted pair cable, complying with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

2.21 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multi-channeled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service-outlet assembly.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. See drawings.
- C. Standards: Comply with scrub water exclusion requirements in UL 514.
- D. Service-Outlet Assembly: Flush type with two simplex receptacles and space for two RJ-45 jacks, complying with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

- E. Size: Selected to fit nominal **4-inch (100-mm)** cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
- F. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
- G. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused **4-inch (100-mm)** cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
- H. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of two, four-pair cables that comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

2.22 PREFABRICATED MULTI-OUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multi-outlet harness.
- B. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. See drawings.
- C. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- D. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.
- E. Multi-outlet Harness:
 - 1. Receptacles: 15-A, 125-V, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles complying with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
 - 2. Receptacle Spacing: **6 inches (150 mm)**.
 - 3. Wiring: No. 12 AWG solid, Type THHN copper, single circuit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.

3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pig tailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than **6 inches (152 mm)** in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.
2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multi-gang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- C. Essential Electrical System: Mark receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system to allow easy identification using a self-adhesive label.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with NFPA 99.
 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 3. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.

3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Test straight-blade convenience outlets in patient-care areas for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz. (115 g).
- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
 - a. Control circuits.
 - b. Motor-control centers.
 - c. Panelboards.
 - d. Switchboards.
 - e. Enclosed controllers.
 - f. Enclosed switches.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures," Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Bussmann, an Eaton business.
 2. Edison; a brand of Bussmann by Eaton.
 3. Littelfuse, Inc.
 4. Mersen USA.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
 - 1. Type RK-1: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 - 2. Type RK-5: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 - 3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 - 4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 - 5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 - 6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 - 7. Type T: 600-V, zero- to 800-A rating, 200 kAIC, very fast acting.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
 - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
 - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
 - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
 - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Service Entrance: Class L, fast acting.
2. Feeders: Class L, time delay.
3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.
4. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
5. Power Electronics Circuits: Class J, high speed.
6. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.
7. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, and control transformer duty.
8. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Architect Construction Manager Owner.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Cylinder.
2. Downlight.
3. Highbay, linear.
4. Highbay, nonlinear.
5. Linear industrial.
6. Lowbay.
7. Parking garage.
8. Recessed, linear.
9. Strip light.
10. Surface mount, linear.
11. Surface mount, nonlinear.
12. Suspended, linear.
13. Suspended, nonlinear.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards" for panelboards used for lighting control.
3. Section 260933 "Central Dimming Controls" or Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming systems and for fluorescent dimming controls with dimming ballasts specified in interior lighting Sections.
4. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
 - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- D. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

G. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment and or luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

E. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."
- C. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).
 - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- D. Altitude: Sea level to 5000 feet (300 m).

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

- D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- F. California Title 24 compliant.

2.3 CYLINDER.

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.
- C. Lamp:
 - 1. Minimum 1000 lm.
 - 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
 - 3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 3000 K.
 - 4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
 - 5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
 - 6. Internal driver.
 - 7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
 - 8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
 - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
 - 2. Clear powder-coat finish.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
 - 2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. With integral mounting provisions.

H. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.4 DOWNLIGHT.

A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 1000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Fixed lens.
2. Medium light distribution.
3. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
4. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
5. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
6. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.5 PARKING GARAGE.

A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 4,000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 75 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. Low-profile housing and heat sink.
4. Fully gasketed and sealed. IP 65 rated.
5. Stainless-steel latches.
6. Integral pressure equalizer.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. With integral mounting provisions.

H. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.6 RECESSED, LINEAR.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 1,500 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

- a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
- b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.

8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

2.7 STRIP LIGHT.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings

- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 3000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.8 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum 3000 lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.9 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see specifications
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.
- C. Lamp:
 - 1. Minimum 1000 lm.
 - 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
 - 3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
 - 4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
 - 5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
 - 6. Internal driver.
 - 7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
 - 8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
 - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
 - 2. Clear powder-coat finish.
 - 3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Standards:
 - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.10 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.
- C. Lamp:
 - 1. Minimum 1,000 lm/ft.

2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.
3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Tempered Fresnel glass or Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.11 SUSPENDED, NONLINEAR

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following: see drawings
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.
- C. Lamp:
 1. Minimum 2,000 3,000 lm.
 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 85 lm/W.

3. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
4. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
8. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Clear powder-coat finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Tempered Fresnel glass Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125-inch (3.175-mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.12 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.

- C. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
 - 2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.
- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

2.13 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.14 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: **1/2-inch (13-mm)** steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.
- D. Rod Hangers: **3/16-inch (5-mm)** minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secured to outlet box.
 - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
 - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
 - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:
 - 1. Ceiling Mount:
 - a. Two **5/32-inch- (4-mm-)** diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to **10 feet (3 m)** in length.
 - b. Pendant mount with **5/32-inch- (4-mm-)** diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to **10 feet (3 m)** in length.
 - c. Hook mount.
 - 2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.
 - 3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.

4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

- I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."

- B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied

conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Emergency lighting units.
 - 2. Exit signs.
 - 3. Luminaire supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
 - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
 - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
 - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

- a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires and signs, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires and signs shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- D. Samples: For each product and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with factory-applied finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
- G. Product Schedule:
1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of the plane of the luminaires.
 4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
 - e. Sprinklers.

- f. Access panels.
 - g. **<Insert item>**.
- 7. Moldings.
- 8. **<Insert feature>**.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Provide seismic qualification certificate for each piece of equipment.
- E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by **[manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency] [a qualified testing agency]**.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's **[special]** warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps: **[10 for every 100]** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every **[20] [50]** emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 3. Diffusers and Lenses: **[One for every 100]** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 4. Globes and Guards: **[One for every 20]** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: [**Two**] year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: [**Five**] years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for [**first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years**] [**the entire warranty period**].

2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: [**Two**] [**Five**] years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for [**first year and prorated warranty for the remaining six years**] [**the entire warranty period**].

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7]. [**Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.**]
 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.
 1. Emergency Connection: Operate [**one**] lamp(s) continuously at an output of [**1100**] lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect un-switched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
 - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
 - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
 - d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).
4. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at 40 percent of rated light output.
 5. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 6. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 7. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
 8. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
 9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- I. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate one LED lamp continuously. Connect un-switched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire [ballast].
 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote luminaire continuously.
 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
 6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
 7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 9. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit

triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

10. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Luminaires:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
2. Emergency Luminaires: as indicated on Interior Luminaire Schedule Drawings, with the following additional features:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120/277 V ac.
 - b. Internal External emergency power unit.
 - c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
 - d. UL 94 5VA flame rating.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
2. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on Interior Luminaire Schedule Drawings.
3. Operating at nominal voltage of 120/277 V ac.
4. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
5. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
6. Two LED lamp heads.
7. Internal External emergency power unit.

D. Remote Emergency Lighting Units:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
2. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on Interior Luminaire Schedule Drawings.
3. Operating at nominal voltage of 120/277 V ac.
4. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
5. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
6. Two LED lamp heads.
7. External emergency power unit.

2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
 - 2. Operating at nominal voltage of 120/277 V ac.
 - 3. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each luminaire; 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
 - 4. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 - 5. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
 - 6. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
 - a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply battery for power connection to remote unit.
 - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
 - 1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
 - 2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
 - 3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 4. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:

1. Extruded aluminum housing and heat sink.
 2. Clear powder coat finish.
- E. Conduit: Electrical metallic tubing, minimum **3/4 inch (21 mm)** in diameter.

2.6 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.

3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service:

1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
2. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, signs, or luminaires that are defective.
 - a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265213

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.
 - 2. Luminaire-lowering devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.
- C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- D. Standard: See "Pole."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.
 - 1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
 - 2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
 - 3. Anchor bolts.
 - 4. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

3. Detail fabrication and assembly of poles and pole accessories.
 4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of installation.
 5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
 6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.
- D. Samples: For each exposed lighting pole, standard, and luminaire-supporting device and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements according to AASHTO LTS-6-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: For accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Material Test Reports:
1. For each foundation component, by a qualified testing agency.
 2. For each pole, by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Sample Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty.
- H. Soil test reports

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For poles and luminaire-lowering devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include pole inspection and repair procedures.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole repair materials.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for foundation testing.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- B. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least **12 inches (300 mm)** above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below finished grade.
- D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
- E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of pole(s) and luminaire-lowering device(s) that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within a specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs from special warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Corrosion Resistance: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design pole foundation and pole power system.

- B. Seismic Performance: Foundation and pole shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- C. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- D. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- E. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2200 N) distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- F. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.
- G. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
 - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 50 feet (15 m) in height is 150 mph.
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Minimum Design Life: 50 years.
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.
 - 2. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 150 mph.
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.
- H. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- I. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL POLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American LitePole.
 - 2. Bridgewell Resources.

3. [Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.](#)
 4. [E-conolight.](#)
 5. [EGS/Appleton Electric.](#)
 6. [H.E. Williams.](#)
 7. [Hapco.](#)
 8. [Hubbell Incorporated.](#)
 9. [KIM Lighting.](#)
 10. [Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.](#)
 11. [LSI Industries.](#)
 12. [Millerbernd Manufacturing Company.](#)
 13. [NAFCO International.](#)
 14. [Ruud Lighting Direct.](#)
 15. [Union Metal Corporation.](#)
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
- C. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- D. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of **46,000 psig (317 MPa)**; one-piece construction up to **40 feet (12 m)** in height with access handhole in pole wall.
1. Shape: as specified on the drawings.
 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- E. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 240/A 240M, stainless steel with a minimum yield of **55,000 psig (379 MPa)**; one-piece construction up to **40 feet (12 m)** in height with access handhole in pole wall.
1. Shape: as specified on the drawings.
 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- F. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.
- G. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adaptor, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.
- H. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

- I. Fasteners: Stainless steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 - 1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 - 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.
- K. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads.
 - 1. For climbing positions, install at 15-inch (381-mm) vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole, oriented 180 degrees from each other; first step shall be at an elevation 10 feet (3 m) above finished grade.
 - 2. For working positions, install steps on opposite side of pole, oriented 180 degrees from each other at the same elevation.
- L. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.
- M. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weatherproof, 3-by-5-inch (76-by-130-mm) handhole located at midpoint of pole, with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.
- N. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported load multiplied by a 5.0 safety factor.
- O. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel, with finish matching that of pole.
- P. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- Q. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- R. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
 - 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

- a. Color: Match Architect's sample.
- S. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 2. Powder Coat: Comply with AAMA 2604.
 - a. Electrostatic-applied powder coating; single application and cured to a minimum 2.5- to 3.5-mils dry film thickness. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal corrosion protection.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ALUMINUM POLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [American LitePole.](#)
 2. [Bridgewell Resources.](#)
 3. [Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.](#)
 4. [E-conolight.](#)
 5. [EGS/Appleton Electric.](#)
 6. [H.E. Williams.](#)
 7. [Hapco.](#)
 8. [Hubbell Incorporated.](#)
 9. [KIM Lighting.](#)
 10. [Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.](#)
 11. [LSI Industries.](#)
 12. [Lyte Poles Incorporated.](#)
 13. [NAFCO International.](#)
 14. [Ruud Lighting Direct.](#)
 15. [Sentry Electric, LLC.](#)
 16. [Union Metal Corporation.](#)
 17. [Valmont Industries, Inc.](#)
- B. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6, with access handhole in pole wall.
- C. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6061-T6, with access handhole in in pole wall.
1. Shape: as specified on the drawings. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

- D. Mast Arms: Steel type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.
- E. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
 - 1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adaptor, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
 - 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.
- F. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- G. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Bolted **1/2-inch (13-mm)** threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 - 1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as to substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 - 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of **2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm)**, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.
- J. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- K. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 - 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I clear coating of 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
- L. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- M. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 2. Powder coat shall comply with AAMA 2604.
 - a. Electrostatic applied powder coating; single application with a minimum 2.5- to 3.5-mils dry film thickness; cured according to manufacturer's instructions. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal corrosion protection.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex Receptacle: Ground-fault circuit interrupter type, 120 V ac, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly. Comply with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
1. Surface mounted **12 inches (300 mm)** above finished grade.
 - a. NEMA 250, Type 3R, nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, enclosure with cover; color to match pole.
 - b. Lockable hasp and latch complying with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
- B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
- C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.
- D. Transformer-Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and to accept indicated accessories. Include removable flanged access cover secured with bolts or screws.
- E. Decorative accessories, supplied by decorative pole manufacturer, include the following:
1. Banner Arms: as specified on the drawings.

2. Flag Holders: as specified on the drawings.
3. Ladder Rests: as specified on the drawings.

2.5 LOWERING SYSTEM FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. System Description: Capable of lowering luminaire assembly to a service position within **36 inches (900 mm)** of finished grade in winds up to **30 mph (49 km/h)**. Provide manual plug connection to electrical power accessible in lowered position. Assembled system of pole, luminaire, and lowering device shall be capable of loads specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- B. Compatibility of Material: Materials for attachment and connection of luminaire-mounting assembly, lowering device, lowering cable, and portable winch shall be compatible to avoid corrosion and electrolysis.
- C. Structural and Mechanical Design Safety Factor: 5.0, minimum, for static and dynamic loads of load-bearing components, including cable.
- D. Luminaire-Mounting and Disconnect Arrangement: Multiple carriage-mounted luminaires, arranged for lowering and rising as a group.
 1. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires shall manually disconnect inside pole base, using weatherproof multi-pin connector, and shall be arranged to move within the pole during lowering and rising of luminaire assembly.
 2. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires shall automatically disconnect at weatherproof multi-pin connector within the pole-top lowering head at the beginning of the lowering cycle and reconnect when luminaire or luminaire assembly is raised to the operating position.
- E. Lowering Device: Weatherproof, cast-aluminum housing, and multiple mechanical latches. Moving parts of latching assembly shall be located in the portion of the unit that is lowered to servicing position. Positive latching in the operating position shall be indicated to the operator at the base of the pole by a clear visual signal or by other means acceptable to Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Lowering Cable: Zinc-electroplated- or stainless- steel aircraft cable.
- G. Portable Winch: Manual 120-V electric type. One required.
 1. Winch Power Connection: Cord and plug.
 2. Winch Raise-Lower Control: Remote-control station with **15 feet (5 m)** of cable.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.
- C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 POLE FOUNDATION

- A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123 M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Pre-Cast Foundations: Factory fabricated, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
 - 1. Baseplate: Stamped with manufacturer's name, date of production, and cable entry.
- D. Direct-Buried Foundations: Install to depth indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height as indicated. Add backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) to 9-inch (230-mm) layers, tamping each layer before adding the next as shown on Drawings. To ensure a plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while tamping.

- E. Direct-Buried Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height as indicated. To ensure a plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while tamping.
 - 1. Make holes **6 inches (150 mm)** in diameter larger than pole diameter.
 - 2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)** at 28 days and finish in a dome above finished grade.
 - 3. Use a short piece of **1/2-inch (13-mm)** diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
 - 4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
- F. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied steel template, uniformly spaced.

3.3 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.
 - 1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: **60 inches (1520 mm)**.
 - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: **10 feet (3 m)**.
 - 3. Trees: **15 feet (5 m)** from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
 - 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use non-shrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
 - 3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Use a short piece of **1/2 -inch (13-mm)** diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum **6-inch-(150-mm-)** wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level **1 inch (25 mm)** below top of concrete slab.
- F. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum using insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with ~~0.010-inch-~~ (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground Nonmetallic Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
 - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundation.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Inspect poles for nicks, mars, dents, scratches, and other damage.
 - 2. System function tests.

END OF SECTION 265613

SECTION 265619 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards" for panelboard-based lighting control.
3. Section 260933 "Central Dimming Controls" or Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming systems specified in Section 265100.
4. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.
5. Section 265613 "Lighting Poles and Standards" for poles and standards used to support exterior lighting equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
 - 4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 IES LM-80.
 - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
 - 7. Photoelectric relays.
 - 8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals
- D. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture indicated with factory-applied finish.
- E. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.
 - 1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports and seismic restraints.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
 2. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
 3. Underground utilities and structures.
 4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
 5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
 6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
 7. Building features.
 8. Vertical and horizontal information.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:
1. Luminaire.
 2. Photoelectric relay.
- E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
 2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

2. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- F. Mockups: For exterior luminaires, complete with power and control connections.
 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- E. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

- G. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4100 K.
- H. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- J. Internal driver.
- K. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120/277 V ac.
- L. In-line Fusing: Separate in-line fuse for each luminaire.
- M. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.
- N. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.
- O. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Atlas Lighting Products.
 - 2. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
 - 3. Deco Lighting.
 - 4. Eaton.
 - 5. GE Lighting Solutions.
 - 6. Intelligent Illuminations, Inc.
 - 7. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 8. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 - 9. Philips Lighting Company.
 - 10. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
 - 11. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
- B. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
- C. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at **1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx)** and off at **4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx)** with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.
 - 1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
 - 2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 LUMINAIRE TYPES

A. Area and Site:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
2. Luminaire Shape: see drawings.
3. Mounting: Pole or Building with extruded-aluminum arm, **11 inches (280 mm)** in length.
4. Luminaire-Mounting Height: see drawings.
5. Distribution: see drawings.
6. Diffusers and Globes: Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic.
7. Housings:
 - a. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
 - b. Clear powder-coat finish.

B. Bollard:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: see drawings
2. Shape: see drawings.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: Stainless steel. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: as selected by Architect/Owner.

- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
 - b. Color: Match Architect's sample of manufacturer's standard color.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, roofs, and canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.

- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
 - 1. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.6 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-)** thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
 - a. IES LM-5.
 - b. IES LM-50.
 - c. IES LM-52.
 - d. IES LM-64.
 - e. IES LM-72.
 - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
 - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265619

SECTION 31 07 00 - GENERAL SITE CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Includes but Not Limited to
 - 1. General procedures and requirements for Site Work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions
 - 1. 48 hours minimum prior to performing any work on site, contact Dig Line to arrange for utility location services.
 - 2. Perform minor, investigative excavations to verify location of various existing underground facilities at sufficient locations to assure that no conflict with the proposed work exists and sufficient clearance is available to avoid damage to existing facilities.
 - 3. Perform investigative excavating 5 days minimum in advance of performing any excavation or underground work.
 - 4. Upon discovery of conflicts or problems with existing facilities, notify Architect by phone or fax within 24 hours. Follow telephone or fax notification with letter and diagrams indicating conflict or problem and sufficient measurements and details to evaluate problem.
 - 5. Notify Owner of utilities a minimum of 48 hours prior to a work taking place.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection
 - 1. Spillage -
 - a. Avoid spillage by covering and securing loads when hauling on or adjacent to public streets or highways.
 - b. Remove spillage and sweep, wash, or otherwise clean project, streets, and highways.
 - 2. Dust Control -
 - a. Take precautions necessary to prevent dust nuisance, both on-site and adjacent to public and private properties.
 - b. Correct or repair damage caused by dust.
 - 3. Erosion Control -
 - a. Take precautions necessary to prevent erosion and transportation of soil downstream, to adjacent properties, and into on-site or off-site drainage

- systems.
 - b. Develop, install, and maintain an erosion control plan if required by law.
 - c. Repair and correct damage caused by erosion.
 - 4. Existing Plants and Features - Do not damage tops, trunks, and roots of existing trees and shrubs on site which are intended to remain. Do not use heavy equipment within branch spread. Interfering branches may be removed only with permission of Architect. Do not damage other plants and features which are to remain.
 - 5. Protect site from fire caused by welding, cutting, smoking, or other sources of ignition.
- B. If specified precautions are not taken or corrections and repairs made promptly, Owner may take such steps as may be deemed necessary and deduct costs of such from monies due to Contractor. Such action or lack of action on Owner's part does not relieve Contractor from responsibility for proper protection of the Work.

3.3 REPAIR / RESTORATION

- A. Adjust existing covers, boxes, and vaults to grade.
- B. Replace broken or damaged covers, boxes, and vaults.
- C. Independently confirm size, location, and number of covers, boxes, and vaults which require adjustment.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Notify Architect 48 hours prior to performing excavation or fill work.
- B. If work has been interrupted by weather, scheduling, or other reason, notify Architect 24 hours minimum prior to intended resumption of grading or compacting.
- C. Owner reserves right to require additional testing to re-affirm suitability of completed work including compacted soils which have been exposed to adverse weather conditions.

END OF SECTION 31 07 00

SECTION 31 10 00 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Protecting existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants, and grass to remain.
2. Removing existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants, and grass as indicated on demolition plan.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, abandoning site utilities in place, and removing site utilities.
7. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Design Requirements" for additional LEED requirements.
2. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary utilities, temporary construction and support facilities, temporary security, protection facilities, and temporary erosion and sedimentation control procedures.
3. Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for protecting trees remaining on-site that are affected by site operations.
4. Division 01 Section "Execution" for verifying utility locations and for recording field measurements.
5. Division 02 Section "Structure Demolition" for demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.
6. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for soil materials, excavating, backfilling, and site grading.
7. Division 23 Section "Turf, Grasses, and Plants" for finish grading including preparing and placing planting soil mixes and testing of topsoil material.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2

inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials.

- B. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
- B. Record drawings, according to Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents," identifying and accurately locating capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.

- E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, sediment and erosion control Drawings, a sediment and erosion control plan, specific to the site, that complies with EPA 832/R-92-005 or requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE PROTECTION

- A. Erect and maintain temporary fencing around tree protection zones before starting site clearing. Remove fence when construction is complete.
 - 1. Do not store construction materials, debris, or excavated material within fenced area.

2. Do not permit vehicles, equipment, or foot traffic within fenced area.
 3. Maintain fenced area free of weeds and trash.
- B. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where excavation for new construction is required within tree protection zones, hand clear and excavate to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.
1. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
 2. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
 3. Coat cut faces of roots more than 1-1/2 inches in diameter with emulsified asphalt or other approved coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues.
 4. Backfill with soil as soon as possible.
- D. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
1. Employ an arborist, licensed in jurisdiction where Project is located, to submit details of proposed repairs and to repair damage to trees and shrubs.
 2. Replace trees that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Architect.

3.4 UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- D. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.
- E. Removal of underground utilities is included in Division 21, Division 22, Division 26, Division 27, and Division 28 Sections covering site utilities.

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
 - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
 - 2. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
 - 3. Grind stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
 - 4. Use only hand methods for grubbing within tree protection zone.
 - 5. Remove tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
 - 1. Remove subsoil and non-soil materials from topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
 - 2. Do not stockpile topsoil within tree protection zones.
 - 3. Dispose of excess topsoil as specified for waste material disposal.
 - 4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for re-spreading deeper topsoil.

3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above-grade and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction. Refer to project plans for improvements to be abandoned in place.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 - 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

- A. Disposal: Remove-surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
 - 1. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other non-recyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities.
- B. Disposal: Relocate-surplus soil material and unsuitable topsoil on the Owner's property in a location that has been coordinated with and approved by the owner.

END OF SECTION 31 10 00

SECTION 31 20 00 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Refer to the Geotechnical Engineering Study prepared for this project.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Preparing sub-grades for slabs on grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses, and exterior plants.
 - 2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
 - 3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
 - 5. Subbase and base course for asphalt paving.
 - 6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
 - 7. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
 - 8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for quantity allowance provisions related to unit-price rock excavation and authorized additional excavation.
 - 2. Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for unit-price rock excavation and authorized additional excavation provisions.
 - 3. Division 01 Section Construction Progress Documentation and Photographic Documentation for recording pre-excavation and earthwork progress.
 - 4. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities.
 - 5. Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for protecting and trimming trees to remain.
 - 6. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
 - 7. Divisions 21, 22, 23, 26, 27, and 28 Sections for installing underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical structures.
 - 8. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above-grade and below-grade improvements and utilities.
 - 9. Division 31 Section "Excavation Support and Protection" for shoring, bracing, and sheet piling of excavations.

10. Division 31 Section "Drilled Concrete Piers and Shafts" for excavation of shafts and disposal of surplus excavated material. (Not Used)
11. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading, including preparing and placing topsoil and planting soil for lawns.
12. Division 32 Section "Plants" for planting bed establishment and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.
13. Division 33 Section "Sub-drainage" for drainage of foundations, slabs on grade, walls, and landscaped areas.

1.3 UNIT PRICE

- A. Unit prices for earthwork are included in Division 01 Section "Unit Prices."
- B. Quantity allowances for earthwork are included in Division 01 Section "Allowances."

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the work.
 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10-feet in width and more than 30-feet in length.
 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, un-stratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cubic yard for bulk excavation or 3/4 cubic yard for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to

the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:

1. Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,090-lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,650-lbf; measured according to SAE J-1179.
 2. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 210-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 48,510-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
 - J. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
 - K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
 - L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 1. Each type of plastic warning tape.
 2. Geotextile.
 3. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
- B. Samples: 12-by-12-inch Sample of sub-drainage and other geotextiles used.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
 1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 for each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
- D. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earthwork operations. Submit before earthwork begins.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.
- B. Pre-excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review location and installation of shoring prior to excavation within 20 feet of existing buildings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
 - 3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Well Graded, ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM or AASHTO M 145 Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3-inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter. Native rock crushed to meet the above requirements and free from significant porosity may also be used as satisfactory soils.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487 or A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups.
 - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
 - 2. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not well graded.
- D. Subbase (Non-Structural Fill) Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with a maximum

particle size of 6 inches, at least 90 percent passing a 3-inch sieve and not more than 35 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

- E. Base Course: Base course material should be comprised of Untreated Base Course Aggregate Class 'C' per Section 02721 of the Utah Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Untreated Base Course. In the event the above material is unavailable in the required quantities for this project, base course shall be an A-1-a commercial base course comprised of naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 3/4-inch sieve and not more than 11 percent passing a No. 200 sieve and meeting the following gradation limits:
1. Gradation Table Base Course:

1"	100%
1/2"	79-91%
#4	49-61%
#16	27-35%
#200	7-11%
- F. Engineered (Structural) Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with a maximum particle size of 4". at least 70 percent passing a 3/4-inch sieve, a maximum 20 percent passing the No. 200 sieve and a Plasticity Index of 6 or less. Any material exceeding 20 percent passing a No. 200 sieve (including native material) may be acceptable as approved by the Geotechnical Engineer of Record.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 3/4-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve and meeting the following gradation limits.
1. Gradation Table Bedding Course:

3/4"	100%
3/8"	78-92%
#4	55-67%
#16	28-38%
#200	4-8%
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed or crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve, less than 10 percent passing a No. 4 sieve and less than 2 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- I. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- J. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- K. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Non-woven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 157 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 142 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 4. Tear Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
 5. Puncture Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
 7. Permittivity: 0.2 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
 8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
- B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 247 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 4. Tear Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
 5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
 7. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
 8. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Low-density, self-compacting, flowable concrete material as follows:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, 3/4-inch to 3/8-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869.
 5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
 6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
1. As-Cast Unit Weight: 30 to 36 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
 2. Compressive Strength: 80 psi, when tested according to ASTM C 495.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows when required by utility purveyor:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.
 - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.
- D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
 - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.3 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 - 2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
 - 3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
3. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons or vehicle with similar unit axel weight.
 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices and changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.10 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, sub-drainage, damp proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 5. Removing trash and debris.
 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with subbase material as described above; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 12 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
- E. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material or satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
 1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
- G. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.
- H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
- I. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.

- J. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.12 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 2. Under walks and pavements, use subbase material.
 - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 12-inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers. Reduce loose depths as needed to achieve required compactions.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557:
 - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and re-compact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
 - 2. Under walkways, scarify and re-compact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
 - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and re-compact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.

4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent if in landscaping areas or 95 percent if under structures, pavements, or walks.

3.15 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus, or minus 1 inch.
 2. Walks: Plus, or minus 1 inch
 3. Pavements: Plus, or minus 1/2 inch
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.16 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Division 33 Section "Subdrainage."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with 1 layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor].
 2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

3.17 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 - 1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends where called for on details and on plans.
 - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 - 4. Place subbase and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 5. Place subbase and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 - 6. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557.

- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 or ASTM D 1557 where called for on project plans.

3.18 DRAINAGE COURSE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 - 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.

- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least 1 test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than 3 tests.
 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than 2 tests.
 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than 2 tests.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.21 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.
- B. Disposal: Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
1. Remove waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

SECTION 31 50 00 - EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes temporary excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation and Photographic Documentation" for recording preexisting conditions and excavation support and protection system progress.
 - 2. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary utilities and support facilities.
 - 3. Division 31 Section "Dewatering" for dewatering system for excavations. (NOT USED)

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design, furnish, install, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls, existing buildings to remain, existing footings and foundations, and of resisting soil and hydrostatic pressure and superimposed and construction loads.
 - 1. Delegated Design: Design excavation support and protection system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
 - 2. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
 - 3. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
 - 4. Monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements.
 - 5. Coordinate excavation limits with utility replacement, existing utilities to remain, historical trees and other vegetation to remain, and existing buildings to remain.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For excavation support and protection system showing limits of excavation, utilities to be removed and relocated, adjacent structures, and historical trees.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For excavation support and protection system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

- C. Coordinate first paragraph below with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements. "Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- D. Other Informational Submittals:
 - 1. Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by the absence of, the installation of, or the performance of excavation support and protection systems. Submit before Work begins.
 - 2. Record Drawings: Identifying and locating capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.
 - a. Note locations and capping depth of wells and well points.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to excavation support and protection system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Geotechnical report.
 - b. Existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
 - c. Proposed excavations.
 - d. Proposed equipment.
 - e. Monitoring of excavation support and protection system.
 - f. Working area location and stability.
 - g. Coordination with waterproofing.
 - h. Abandonment or removal of excavation support and protection system.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission.
- B. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by geotechnical engineer. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
 - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for excavation support and protection.
 - 2. The geotechnical report is referenced elsewhere in the Project Manual.

- C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
 - 1. During installation of excavation support and protection systems, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, ASTM A 690/A 690M, or ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Steel Sheet Piling: ASTM A 328/A 328M, ASTM A 572/A 572M, or ASTM A 690/A 690M; with continuous interlocks.
 - 1. Corners: Site-fabricated mechanical interlock or Roll-formed corner shape with continuous interlock.
- D. Wood Lagging: Lumber, mixed hardwood, nominal rough thickness of size and strength required for application.
- E. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete" for shotcrete materials and mixes, reinforcement, and shotcrete application.
- F. Cast-in-Place Concrete: ACI 301, of compressive strength required for application.
- G. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- H. Tiebacks: Steel bars, ASTM A 722/A 722M.
- I. Tiebacks: Steel strand, ASTM A 416/A 416M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
 - 1. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.

- B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that forming and finishing of concrete surfaces are not impeded.
- D. Monitor excavation support and protection systems daily during excavation progress and for as long as excavation remains open. Promptly correct bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection systems remain stable.
- E. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installing excavation support and protection systems.

3.2 SOLDIER PILES AND LAGGING

- A. Install steel soldier piles before starting excavation. Extend soldier piles below excavation grade level to depths adequate to prevent lateral movement. Space soldier piles at regular intervals not to exceed allowable flexural strength of wood lagging. Accurately align exposed faces of flanges to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.
- B. Install wood lagging within flanges of soldier piles as excavation proceeds. Trim excavation as required to install lagging. Fill voids behind lagging with soil, and compact.
- C. Install wales horizontally at locations indicated on Drawings and secure to soldier piles.

3.3 SHEET PILING

- A. Before starting excavation, install one-piece sheet piling lengths and tightly interlock to form a continuous barrier. Accurately place the piling, using templates and guide frames unless otherwise recommended in writing by the sheet piling manufacturer. Limit vertical offset of adjacent sheet piling to 60 inches. Accurately align exposed faces of sheet piling to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment. Cut tops of sheet piling to uniform elevation at top of excavation.

3.4 TIEBACKS

- A. Tiebacks: Drill, install, grout, and tension tiebacks. Test load-carrying capacity of each tieback and replace and retest deficient tiebacks.
 - 1. Test loading shall be observed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for design of excavation support and protection system.
 - 2. Maintain tiebacks in place until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral soil and hydrostatic pressures.

3.5 BRACING

- A. Bracing: Locate bracing to clear columns, floor framing construction, and other permanent work. If necessary, to move brace, install new bracing before removing original brace.
 - 1. Do not place bracing where it will be cast into or included in permanent concrete work unless otherwise approved by Architect.
 - 2. Install internal bracing, if required, to prevent spreading or distortion of braced frames.
 - 3. Maintain bracing until structural elements are supported by other bracing or until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

3.6 REMOVAL AND REPAIRS

- A. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and bear soil and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils or damaging structures, pavements, facilities, and utilities.
 - 1. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches below overlaying construction and abandon remainder.
 - 2. Fill voids immediately with approved backfill compacted to density specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 - 3. Repair or replace, as approved by Architect, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Leave excavation support and protection systems permanently in place.

END OF SECTION 31 50 00

SECTION 32 12 16 – ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. APWA Manual of Standard Specifications, Latest Ed.
- C. UDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, Latest Ed.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
- 2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
- 3. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
- 4. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
- 5. Asphalt surface treatments.
- 6. Pavement-marking paint.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 02 Section "Structure Demolition" for demolition, removal, and recycling of existing asphalt pavements, and for geotextiles that are not embedded within courses of asphalt paving.
- 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
- 3. Division 32 Sections for other paving installed as part of crosswalks in asphalt pavement areas.
- 4. Division 32 Section "Pavement Crack Repair" for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices and as defined in Division 1.

1.4 DEFINITION

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
 - 1. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
 - 2. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Each paving fabric, 12 by 12 inches minimum.
 - 2. Each type and color of preformed traffic-calming device.
 - 3. Each pattern and color of imprinted asphalt and precut marking material.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified manufacturer and Installer.
- E. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.
- F. Material Quality Control Test Reports:
 - 1. Testing Report: Submit Quality Control data to the Engineer within 1 working day after completion of each day of paving.
 - 2. Plant Production Report: Submit daily plant production records to the Engineer within 1 working day after completion of each day of paving.
- G. Fire Marshal Approval: For the striping plan, as it relates to fire lanes and the marking thereof.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide copy of manufactures experience for verification of qualifications.
 - 1. Asphalt Binder Supplier: Use a UDOT Binder QMP 509 certified asphalt binder supplier.
 - 2. Asphalt Mix Supplier: Use a UDOT HMA QMP 514 certified asphalt binder supplier.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's authorized installer who is trained and approved for installation of imprinted asphalt required for this Project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of city and DOT for asphalt paving work.
 - 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following: Asphalt Binder Supplier: Use a UDOT Binder QMP 509 certified asphalt binder supplier.
 - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
 - b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
 - c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
 - d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
 1. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
 2. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F.
 3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
 4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.
- C. Imprinted Asphalt Paving: Proceed with coating imprinted pavement only when air temperature is at least 50 deg F and rising and will not drop below 50 deg F within 8 hours of coating application. Proceed only if no precipitation is expected within two hours after applying the final layer of coating.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations. Provide project history where mix design has been used and when.
 - B. Use Table 1 to determine suitability of aggregate source.
- A.

Table 1. Aggregate Physical Properties			
Property		Standard	Requirement
Coarse Aggregate			
Angularity, percent, minimum	One Fractured face	D 5821	90
	Two Fractured faces		85
Wear (hardness or toughness), percent, maximum		C 131	35
Flats or elongates (3:1 length to width), percent, maximum		D 4791	20
Fine Aggregate			
Angularity (uncompacted void content), percent, minimum		T 304	40
Sand equivalent, percent, minimum		D 2419	45
Plastic limit, maximum		D 4318	0
Blended Physical Properties			
Dry-rodded Unit Weight, lb/ft ³ , minimum		C 29	75
			75
Weight Loss (Soundness), percent, maximum		C 88	16
Friable particles, percent, maximum		C 142	2
NOTES			
(a) Course aggregate does not pass No. 4 sieve. Fine aggregate passes.			
(b) Angularity by weight.			
(c) Wear of aggregate may have higher values if aggregate source is known to have higher values.			
(d) Sand equivalent is waived for RAP aggregate but applies to the remainder of the aggregate blend.			
(e) Plastic limit, passing No. 40 sieve. Aggregate is non-plastic even when filler material is added to the aggregate.			
(f) Weight loss, using sodium sulfate.			
(g) Friable particles are clay lumps, shale, wood, mica, coal passing the No. 4 sieve, and other deleterious materials.			

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: Performance Graded Asphalt Binder (PGAB), UDOT Section 02745.
 - 1. Meet or exceed PG 58-28, except for the following.
 - 2. Meet or exceed PG 64-22 for Garfield, Kane, San Juan and Washington counties.
- B. Tack Coat: CSS-1H as per APWA 32 12 13.13, diluted 2 parts concentrate to 1 part water.
- C. Prime Coat: MC-70 or MC-250 as per APWA 32 12 13.19, undiluted; or CSS-1H as per APWA 32 12 13.13, diluted 2 parts concentrate to 1 part water.
- D. Fog Seal: CSS-1H as per APWA 32 01 13.50, diluted 2 parts concentrate to 1 part water.
- E. Water: Potable.
- F. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141, pumping consistency.

2.3 ADDITIVES

- A. Mineral Filler: ASTM D 242 or AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.
- B. Recycle Agent: ASTM D 4552.
- C. Anti-strip Agent: Heat stable cement slurry, lime slurry, or chemical liquid.
- D. RAP (Recycled Asphalt Pavement): Free of detrimental quantities of deleterious materials.
 - 1. Allowed up to 15 percent by weight of RAP or binder, whichever is lesser, with no change in specified binder grade.
 - 2. Determine RAP binder content by chemical extraction.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Sand: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, Grade Nos. 2 or 3.
- C. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288, nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.
- D. Joint Sealant: As per section 32 01 17.
- E. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N, Type F, and Type S; colors complying with FS n-P-1952.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and as indicated.
- F. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and as indicated.
- G. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS n-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and as indicated.
- H. Pavement-Marking Point: MPI #97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint.
 - 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue, and as indicated.
- I. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.
- J. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi minimum compressive strength, 4- 1/2 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.
 - 1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4-inch diameter, 20-inch minimum length.

2.5 ASPHALT MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction; designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types"; and complying with the following requirements:
1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located. Provide mix with the following characteristics:
 - a. Number of compaction blows each end of specimen: **50**.
 - b. Satiability based on ASTM D5581: **1200 minimum**.
 - c. Flow in 0.01 -inch units per ASTM D5581: **10-18**.
 - d. Voids in mineral aggregate (VMA): **14.0%, minimum**.
 - e. Design air voids (Va): **3.5%**
 2. Gradation: Use DM-3/4 gradation meeting Table 2 unless otherwise specified.

Table 2. Master Grading Band limits			
Sieve	Aggregate Grade		
	DM-3/4	DM-1/2	NOTES:
1 inch			(a) Gradation is expressed in percent passing by weight, ASTM C 136. Percentage of fines passing No. 200 sieve determined by washing, ASTM C 117. (b) The alpha portion of the grade designator (DM, OM, FM) represents dense mix, open mix and friction mix. The numerical portion (3/4, 1/2) represents the maximum sieve size.
3/4 inch	100		
1/2 inch		100	
3/8 inch	75 - 91		
No. 4	46 - 62	60 - 80	
No. 8			
No. 16	22 - 34	28 - 42	
No. 50	11 - 23	11 - 23	
No.200	3 - 7	3 - 7	

- A. Emulsified Asphalt Slurry, Type I: As per Section 32 01 13.16.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Verify that the road base has been properly compacted and is at the correct line, grade, and slope.
- C. Verify that the road base thickness is as indicated on the project plans.
- D. Verify that sufficient depth at curbs, walks, lips and other vertical edges is available to place the required thickness of compacted asphalt.
- E. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons or other vehicle with similar axel weight.
 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- F. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- G. Verify that utilities, traffic loop detectors, and other items requiring a cut and installation beneath

the asphalt surface have been completed and that asphalt surface has been repaired flush with adjacent asphalt prior to beginning installation of imprinted asphalt.

3.2 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseal concrete pieces firmly.
 - 1. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseal pieces firmly.
 - 2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.08 to 0.10 gal./sq. yd.
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.
- E. Patching: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
 - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.
 - 2. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Fill and Seal Joints and Cracks as per Section 32 01 17.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Not used.
- C. Prime Coat: Do not use if paving takes place not more than 48 hours after final compaction and grading of road bases. If paving must be delayed significantly, re-grade and re-compact road base or apply Prime Coat. Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.20 gal./sq. yd. Achieve minimum 98% coverage of surface.

Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure.

1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

D. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.08 to 0.10 gal./sq. yd.

1. Achieve minimum 98% coverage of surface.
2. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
3. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings.
4. Remove and replace items damaged by overspray or clean affected surfaces as directed by architect at no additional cost to owner.

3.5 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.

1. Place 3-inch minimum compacted thickness unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift if design thickness is less than 3-inches. If design thickness is more than 3-inches, place in multiple lifts with a minimum thickness of 1.5-inches and a maximum thickness of 3-inches.
3. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
4. Place mix in a manner to maintain and/or establish crown as identified in the drawings.
5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.6 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
2. Locate joints a minimum of 18 inches from designed wheelpath.
3. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
4. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
5. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."

6. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
7. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.7 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 1. Average Density: 93 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 2041 or AASHTO T 209, but not less than 91.5 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Place asphalt so that final compacted asphalt is even with lip of gutter on curbs that drain away from the curb and gutter (open face or depressed curb and gutter). Place asphalt so that final compacted asphalt is 1/4-inch above lip of gutter on curbs that carry water (slope of parking lot is towards the curb). In transition areas, use extra care to make sure that no ponds, bird baths, or depressions are left after paving.
- G. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- H. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- I. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.8 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 1. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or

longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
2. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.
3. After paving is complete, pour water on paved areas and identify ponds, bird baths, and depressions. Identify the same at open face and transition sections of curb and gutter.
4. Remove and replace asphalt, curb and gutter, road base, and or sub-base as necessary to fix ponds, bird baths, or depressions at no additional cost to owner

3.9 SURFACE TREATMENTS

- A. Fog Seals: Apply fog seal at a rate of 0.10 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. to existing asphalt pavement and allow to cure. With fine sand, lightly dust areas receiving excess fog seal.
- B. Slurry Seals: Apply slurry coat in a uniform thickness according to Section 32 01 13.16 Slurry Type I and allow curing.

3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect and approved by the local jurisdictional fire marshal.
- B. Allow paving to age for 7 days minimum days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
 1. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.
- E. Color
 1. Yellow: Parking stalls and pedestrian crossings.
 2. Blue: Handicap insignia at appropriate stalls.
 3. Red: Fire lanes and no parking areas.
 4. White: Directional arrows.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. HMA Mixing Plant: Use a UDOT 514 QMP certified Asphalt Mix Plant.
 1. Submit plant certification documentation with mix design.
 2. Submit daily plant production records within 1 working day after completion of each day of paving and prior to the start of the next paving day.
- B. Perform Quality Control efforts sufficient to demonstrate material produced meets requirements of this specification.
 1. Submit Quality Control data to the Engineer within 1 working day after completion of each day of paving and prior to the start of the next paving day.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
 - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
 - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726. Cores will also be measured for compacted thickness. The owner and architect may also direct additional cores to be taken at locations of their choosing to verify final pavement thickness.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
 - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
 - c. Coordinate the time and locations of all holes so that cores may be filled.
- E. The contractor will replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.13 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
 - 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 32 13 13 – CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
 - 1. Driveways and roadways.
 - 2. Parking lots.
 - 3. Curbs and gutters.
 - 4. Walkways.
 - 5. Unit paver base.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.
 - 3. Division 32 Section "Decorative Concrete Paving" for surface-imprinted, stamped finished concrete pavement.
 - 4. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants of joints in concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture. Include alternate mixture designs when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.

- D. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:
 - 1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- E. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
 - 4. Admixtures.
 - 5. Curing compounds.
 - 6. Applied finish materials.
 - 7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
 - 8. Joint fillers.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Minutes of pre-installation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field-Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- D. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- E. Mockups: Cast mockups of full-size, in-place sections of concrete pavement to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, color, and standard of workmanship.
 - 1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 3. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting construction.
 4. Maintain approved mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed pavement.
 5. Demolish and remove approved mockups from the site when directed by Architect.
 6. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete pavement mixture design and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials and concrete pavement construction practices. Require representatives, including the following, of each entity directly concerned with concrete pavement, to attend conference:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
 - d. Concrete pavement subcontractor.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following Cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement and as specified in Division 3 except that for exterior concrete, the minimum compressive strength is 4000 psi at 28 days.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and Cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of Cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.4 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete pavement, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches long.

1. Products:
 - a. Monofilament Fibers:
 - 1) Axim Concrete Technologies; Fibrasol IIP.
 - 2) Euclid Chemical Company (The); Fiberstrand 100.
 - 3) FORTA Corporation; Forta Mono.
 - 4) Grace, W. R. & Co.--Conn.; Grace MicroFiber.
 - 5) Metalcrete Industries; Polystrand 1000.
 - 6) SI Concrete Systems; Fibermix Stealth.
 - 7) Or engineer approved equal.
 - b. Fibrillated Fibers:
 - 1) Axim Concrete Technologies; Fibrasol F.
 - 2) FORTA Corporation; Forta.
 - 3) Euclid Chemical Company (The); Fiberstrand F.
 - 4) Grace, W. R. & Co.--Conn.; Grace Fibers.
 - 5) SI Concrete Systems; Fibermesh.
 - 6) Or engineer approved equal.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
 1. Products:
 - a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
 - b. Burke by Edeco; BurkeFilm.
 - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Aquafilm.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
 - j. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Confilm.
 - k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
 - l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
 - m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
 - n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.

- o. Symons Corporation; Finishing Aid.
 - p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.
 - q. Or engineer approved equal.
- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- 1. Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoko; Aqua Resin Cure.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
 - k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
 - l. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem Clear.
 - m. Tamms Industries Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
 - n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
 - o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.
 - p. Or engineer approved equal.
- F. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.
- 1. Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 WP WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Resin Emulsion White.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure 2000.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem White Pigmented Cure (J-10-W).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez VOX White Pigmented.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 450.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-White.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R-2.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1200-White.
 - k. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem White.
 - l. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure 200-W.
 - m. Unitex; Hydro White.
 - n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure White 100.
 - o. Or engineer approved equal.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Color stain: Match Architect's sample or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of stains.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-re-dispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- E. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid-set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Burke by Edeco; True Etch Surface Retarder.
 - b. ChemMasters; Exposee.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Delay S.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Surface Retarder S.
 - e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Expose.
 - f. Metalcrete Industries; Surfard.
 - g. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Crete-Nox TA.
 - h. Scofield, L. M. Company; Lithotex.
 - i. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Rugasol-S.
 - j. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Envioset.
 - k. Or engineer approved equal.
- F. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Conshake 600 Colortone.
 - b. Dayton Superior Corporation; Quartz Tuff.
 - c. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Surfex.
 - d. Lambert Corporation; Colorhard.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Quartz Plate FF.
 - f. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Mastercron.
 - g. Metalcrete Industries; Floor Quartz.
 - h. Scofield, L. M. Company; Lithochrome Color Hardener.
 - i. Symons Corporation; Hard Top.

- j. Or engineer approved equal.
2. Color: Match Architect's sample or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-115, Type I or II or AASHTO M 248, Type N or F.
 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue. See Section 321216 for color locations.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
 1. Color: White, Yellow, Blue. See Section 321216 for color locations.
- C. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45
 3. Select slump limit from options in subparagraph below or revise to suit Project.
 4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
 1. Air Content: 5-8 percent nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Use water-reducing admixture, high-range, water-reducing admixture, high-range, water-reducing and retarding admixture, plasticizing, and retarding admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.

2. Specify admixtures as part of submittal. Verify that admixtures proposed do not adversely affect stained concrete and will not modify colors of stain.
 3. Coordinate acceptability of admixtures with architect.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
 3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- G. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. where specified and approved in mix submittal.
- H. Color Stain: Add stain to concrete per manufacturers recommendations and to meet color required by architect and owner on areas of stained concrete.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
1. For concrete mixes of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 2. For concrete mixes larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons or similar axel weight vehicle.
 - 3. Subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch require correction according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- C. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.

1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site.
- F. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.

- G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- I. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- J. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
- K. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.
- L. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
 - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.
- M. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.
- N. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- O. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.6 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared, and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
 3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8-inch-deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
 4. Coordinate with architect the locations of each type of finish.

3.7 SPECIAL FINISHES

- A. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to pavement surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 1. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match pavement color required.
 2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over pavement surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color and embed by power floating.
 3. After final floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish to concrete.
 4. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.

- B. Coordinate the locations of finishes with the architect and owner prior to placing concrete.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screening, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moist Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8-inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot-long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
 - 5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.

6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow concrete pavement to cure for 14 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
 1. Spread glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100-cu. yd. or 5000 sq. ft. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3-consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.12 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

SECTION 32 13 73 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete pavement.
 - 2. Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing non-traffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.
 - 2. Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for constructing joints in concrete pavement.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint-sealant samples in 1/2-inch wide joints formed between two 6-inch long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For installer and testing agency.
- E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for sealants.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - 2. Submit not fewer than six (6) pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
 - 5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- D. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing of current sealant products within a 36-month period preceding the commencement of the Work.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi component materials.
- B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
 - 2. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 3. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
 - 4. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.

5. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Multi component Jet-Fuel-Resistant Sealant for Concrete: Pourable, chemically curing elastomeric formulation complying with the following requirements for formulation and with ASTM C 920 for type, grade, class, and uses indicated:
 1. Urethane Formulation: Type M; Grade P; Class 12-1/2; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Available Products:
 - 1) Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-300.
 - 2) Engineer approved equal.
 2. Coal-Tar-Modified Polymer Formulation: Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Available Products:
 - 1) Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Gardox.
 - 2) Engineer Approved Equal.
 3. Bitumen-Modified Urethane Formulation: Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Available Products:
 - 1) Tremco Sealant/Waterproofing Division; Vulkem 202.
 - 2) Engineer approved Equal.

- B. Single-Component Jet-Fuel-Resistant Urethane Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, pourable, coal-tar-modified, urethane formulation complying with ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.; Sonomeric 1.
 - b. Engineer Approved Equal.
- C. Type NS Silicone Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, nonsag silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type NS.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcro Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- D. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcro Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- E. Multicomponent Low-Modulus Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Proprietary formulation consisting of reactive petropolymer and activator components producing a pourable, self-leveling sealant.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sof-Seal.
 - b. Engineer Approved Equal.

2.4 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Jet-Fuel-Resistant Elastomeric Sealant for Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3569.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcro Inc.; Superseal 444/777.
 - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3569.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- B. Jet-Fuel-Resistant Sealant for Concrete and Tar Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3581.
 - 1. Available Products:

- a. Crafcoc Inc.; Superseal 1614A.
 - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 1614.
 - c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3406.
 - d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3569.
 - e. Engineer Approved Equal.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant for Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3406.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Crafcoc Inc.; Superseal 444/777.
 - b. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Poly-Jet 3406.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
- D. Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3405.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Koch Materials Company; Product No. 9005.
 - b. Koch Materials Company; Product No. 9030.
 - c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Hi-Spec.
 - d. Engineer Approved Equal.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are non-staining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.
- D. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

2.6 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
 - 3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform

beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.

F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 32 13 73

SECTION 32 84 00 - IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

PART I – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. SECTION INCLUDES

1. Complete irrigation system including all valves, piping, sprinkler heads, drip emitters, tubing, accessories, controls, and wiring.

B. RELATED SECTIONS

1. Section 31 2000 – Earth Moving
2. Section 32 9300 - Landscape Planting
3. Section 33 0000 – Utilities

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM):

1. D1784 Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
2. D2241 Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
3. D2466 Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40

1.3 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- ##### A. Irrigation systems to be furnished and installed a subcontract to section 32 9300 –Landscape planting.

B. IRRIGATION HEAD LAYOUT

1. Design location of irrigation heads, drip tubing, and emitters may be adjusted slightly in the field as necessary to meet actual site conditions and to avoid planting and obstructions such as utility boxes, signs light poles and fire hydrants.

C. WATER COVERAGE

1. Minimum Water Coverage is not less than 100% for all irrigated areas, excluding drip zones.
2. Drip zones shall be installed per plan with the specified number of emitters at the specified spacing.

D. MINIMUM WORKING PRESSURE

1. Mainline piping with a minimum working pressure of 150 psig.
2. Circuit and drain piping with a minimum working pressure of 100 psig.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data including pressure loss, pressure rating, rated capacity, and electrical data of the following equipment to be used on the project:
1. Manual and automatic control valves
 2. Gate valves
 3. Quick coupler valves
 4. Valve boxes and vaults
 5. Spray heads
 6. Controller
 7. Wire, wire connectors and grounding equipment
 8. Pipe sleeves, circuit pipe, mainline pipe, and drain pipe, fittings and restraints.
 9. Flow Sensor
 10. Backflow Preventer
 11. Enclosures
- B. Maintenance data for inclusion in “Operating and Maintenance Manual”
1. Automatic control valves
 2. Sprinklers
 3. Controllers and remote control equipment
 4. Flow Sensor
 5. Backflow Preventer
- C. Record Drawings
1. Record Drawings shall be furnished to the Landscape Architect at the time of Substantial Completion Inspection before a letter of Substantial Completion for the irrigation sprinkler system will be Issued.
 2. Provide name and phone number of the servicing water purveyor, include the name of the installer and the date irrigation work was completed.
 3. Indicate locations, sizes and kinds of equipment installed.
 4. Provide dimensions from two points of reference for the following items:
 - a. Water Meters or settings
 - b. Backflow Preventer
 - c. Master Valve
 - d. Control wire junction boxes
 - e. Flow Sensors
 - f. Remote Control Valves
 - g. Quick Couplers
 - h. Pressure Main Lines
 - i. Manual Drain Valves and Sumps
 - j. Control Wire (When not in mainline trench)
 - k. Controller Location(s) (Note manufacturer, model, size and number of station used)
 - l. Rain Sensors
 - m. Flow Sensors
 - n. Note and identify location(s) of existing utility systems as encountered during installation, i.e.; gas, phone, sewer, etc.
 - o. Lateral Lines when deviated from plan
 - p. Sleeves and sizes

- q. Control wire conduit and size
 - r. Flush Valves
- D. Color coded drawing of the irrigation system, 11x17", indicating valve numbers and the area covered. Laminate drawing and mount drawing on the wall near the irrigation controller.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of water utility service
- B. Comply with all applicable codes, laws and ordinances that apply to irrigation systems.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Irrigation contractor must have a minimum of 5 years of experience and has completed 5 irrigation systems of similar size using similar materials. Irrigation contractor shall be able to supply proof of a successful performance record.
- D. Listing, labeling
 - 1. Listing, label or other marking on equipment that has been made to specific standards.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling: Equipment, specialties, and accessories that are listed and labeled.
 - 3. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
 - 4. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- E. Product Options: The design of irrigation head spacing, pipe sizing, and valving is based on specific manufacturers and models. Substitutions may be considered provided that the proposed substituted equipment is equal in performance, throw radius, flow rates, and pressure ratings. Substituted equipment may not be cause for a redesign of any portion of the irrigation system. The burden of proof of product equality is on the Contractor. The Landscape Architect will make a determination of any proposed substitutions prior to the bid. No requests for substitutions will be reviewed after bids have been received by the Owner.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing utility locations and verify that irrigation system piping may be installed in compliance with original design and referenced standards.
- B. Installation of the irrigation system may begin after the grading of the subgrade has been approved and the site is free of construction debris. Report to the Landscape Architect any unsatisfactory conditions.
- C. Reports on subsurface condition investigations made during design of the project are available for informational purposes only; data in reports are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity of conditions (between soil borings). Owner assumes no responsibility for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this information.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Maintain uninterrupted water service to adjacent users during normal irrigation hours. Arrange for temporary water shutoff with Owner and neighbors.

- B. Coordinate work with landscape work specified in Section 32 9300 -Landscape Planting and with work specified in Section 33 0000 – Utilities

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Extra materials shall be delivered to the Owner. Extra materials shall be identical to the equipment installed on the project. Materials shall be packaged in the original shipping boxes if available and packaged to prevent damage. Boxes shall be taped closed and the contents of the box shall be clearly marked on the outside.
- B. Quick Couplers: Furnish one quick coupler for every 15 installed on the project with a minimum of one.
- C. Quick Coupler Hose Swivels: Furnish two.
- D. Quick Coupler Operating Keys: Furnish two.
- E. Sprinklers: Furnish one sprinkler head of each type for every 20 installed with a minimum of 5.
- F. Emitters and bubblers: Furnish 1 for every 50 installed. with a minimum of 10.
- G. Valve Keys: Furnish two tee-handle units.

1.9 WARRANTY/GUARANTEE

- A. Contractor will guarantee all workmanship and materials of the irrigation system for the period of one year after the final acceptance of the irrigation system. Contractor shall repair or replace any defect in workmanship or material within seven days after receiving written notice from the owner or the owner's representative. Contractor shall make warranty repairs at his own expense. If the contractor fails to make repairs within seven days, the owner shall make the repairs at the contractor's expense. In case of emergency, where the Owner determines that a delay presents a hazard or could result in serious loss or damage, the Owner may make repairs at the contractor's expense after a verbal communication with the contractor, without written notice.
- B. The guarantee shall be in the form of a letter from the Contractor addressed to the Owner. The letter shall incorporate the language stated above and be signed by an authorized officer/agent or Owner of the Contractor.
- C. During the guarantee period, the Contractor will drain the system in the fall and put the system back into operation in the spring. This work shall be done in the presence of the Owner's representative and maintenance personnel.

1.10 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver irrigation system components in manufacturer's original undamaged and unopened containers with labels intact and legible.
- B. Deliver plastic piping in bundles, packaged to provide adequate protection of pipe ends, both threaded or plain.
- C. Store and handle materials to prevent damage and deterioration.
- D. Provide secure, locked storage for valves, sprinkler heads, and similar components that cannot be immediately replaced, to prevent installation delays.

PART II – PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. MANUFACTURES

1. J-M Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Pacific Western Extruded Plastics Co.
3. Eagle Pacific Industries, Inc.
4. The Harrington Corporation (HARCO)
5. Sigma
6. Leemco
7. Spears
8. Lasco
9. Nibco

B. Irrigation Mainline Pipe

1. 4” and larger:
 - a. Pipe: ASTM D 2241, PVC Class-200, SDR-21, 260 psig.
 - b. Joint: ASTM D 2241, PVC Class-200 bell end.
 - c. Fitting: ASTM A 3139, ASTM A-536, Deep socket cast iron.
 - d. Joint Restraints: UNI-B-13-94, grip ring pipe restraints.
 - e. Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast bronze.
2. 3” and smaller:
 - a. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120, Schedule 40, 160 psig.
 - b. Joints: ASTM D2241 Schedule 40 bell end
 - c. Fittings: ASTM D 2466 Schedule 40 Socket type

C. Irrigation Lateral Pipe

1. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120, Schedule 40, 160 psig.
2. Joints: ASTM D2241 bell end
3. Fittings: ASTM D 2466 Schedule 40 Socket type

D. Manifold pipe

1. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120 compound, Schedule 80.
2. Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80 Socket
3. Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464. Schedule 80:

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Solvent Cement: ASTM F656 primer and ASTM D2564 solvent cement in color other than orange.

- B. Gaskets for Plastic Flanged Joints: Materials recommended by plastic pipe and fittings manufacturer.
- C. Gaskets for Plastic Joints: Trans gaskets as recommended the fittings manufacturer.

2.3 VALVES

A. Gate Valves

- 1. 3" and larger: AWWA C509, resilient seated; bronze stem, cast-iron, or ductile iron body and bonnet, stem nut, 200 psig (1380 kPa) working pressure; and ends that fit NPS dimension, PVC pipe. Include elastomeric gaskets.
- 2. 2-1/2" and smaller: Bronze, Nonrising Stem Gate Valves MSS SP-80, Type 1, solid wedge; nonrising, copper-silicon-alloy stem; Class 125, body and screw bonnet of ASTM B 62 cast bronze, with threaded ends. Include polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) impregnated packing, brass packing gland, and malleable-iron handwheel.
- 3. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nibco, Inc.
 - b. Clow Valve Co. Div., McWane, Inc
 - c. Stockham Valves & Fittings, Inc.
 - d. Waterous Co.

B. Curb Stops

- 1. 2" inches and Smaller: Bronze body, ground key plug or ball, 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum pressure rating, wide tee head, with inlet and outlet to match service piping material.
- 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ford Meter Box Co., Inc.
 - b. Hays Div., Romac Industries
 - c. A.Y McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - d. Mueller Co., Grinnel Corp.

C. Plastic Ball Valves: Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic, with 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum pressure rating, ends compatible to piping where valve is to be installed, and tee handle.

- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Spears Manufacturing
 - b. Nibco, Inc.
 - c. Matco-Norca

D. Ball Valves: Ball valves shall be solid bronze meeting Federal Specification WW-V-35C, TYPE II, COMPOSITION: BZ, STYLE: 3. Size shall be the same size as the main line on which it is installed. Valves shall be installed on the up-stream side of the electric remote control valve manifold and in the same valve box.

- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nibco, Inc.

- b. Stockham Valves & Fittings, Inc.
 - c. Waterous Co.
- E. Drain Valves: All drain valves shall be ¾” brass full turn ball cocks and installed as per details on the Drawings. Valves shall be tested for 150 psi working pressure. This valve is to be installed on mainlines only.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ford Meter Box Co., Inc.
 - b. Hays Div., Romac Industries
 - c. Mueller Co., Grinnel Corp.
- F. Automatic Control Valves: Diaphragm-type, normally closed, with manual flow adjustment, and operated by 24-volt-a.c. solenoid.
- 1. Manufactures:
 - a. Hunter Industries
- G. Quick-Couplers: Factory-fabricated, 2-piece assembly. Include coupler water-seal valve; removable upper body with spring-loaded or weighted, rubber-covered cap; hose swivel with ASME B1.20.7, ¾-11.5NH Threads for garden hose on outlet; and operating key.
- 1. Manufactures:
 - a. Hunter Industries.
- B. Valve Boxes: Polyethylene (PE), acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS), fiberglass, polymer concrete, or precast concrete box and cover. Size as required for application. **Lid color to match surrounding landscape surface.**
- 1. Drainage Backfill: Cleaned gravel or crushed stone, graded from 3-inches (75 mm) maximum to ¾-inch (19 mm) minimum.
 - 2. Valve boxes shall be of sufficient size to house one (1) electric remote control valves with unions, and still allow room for maintenance without having to excavate or perform similar operations. Boxes shall have lock down lids and shall meet ASTM D638 for tensile strength of 4,300 pounds per square inch.
 - 3. Manufactures:
 - a. Ametek by Plymouth Products Div., AMTETK
 - b. Brooks Products, Inc. Polyplastics Div.
 - c. Carson Industries, Inc.
 - d. DFW/HPI by Hefco Plastics, Inc.
 - e. Rain Bird Sprinkler Mfg. Corp.

2.2 SPRINKLERS

- A. Description: Manufacturer’s standard sprinklers designed to provide uniform coverage over entire area of spray shown on Drawings at available water pressure, as follows:
- 1. Housings: plastic, except where material is specified.

- B. Pop-up, Spray: Fixed pattern, with screw-type flow adjustment and stainless steel retraction spring.
- C. Manufactures:
 - 1. Hunter Industries

2.3 AUTOMATIC CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Description: Low-voltage controller system made for control of irrigation system automatic control valves. Controller operates on 120 volts a.c. building power system, provides 24 volts a.c. power to control valves. Controller to operate a conventional system. Install with electrical junction box sized to accommodate all conduits, controller, and wires.
- B. Manufactures:
 - 1. Hunter Industries
- C. Lightning Protection: Provide manufacturer's recommended lightning protection on each controller. Coordinate with electrical.

2.4 WIRING

- A. Irrigation control wires: UL 493, solid copper conductor, polyethylene insulated cable, suitable for direct burial. 14 AWG common wire and 14 AWG between valves and controllers.
- B. Wire Connectors: 3M DBRY-6 Direct Bury Splice Kit.

2.5 THRUST BLOCKS

- A. All main lines shall have a thrust block of poured concrete installed at each change of direction. The thrust block shall be of sufficient size for the pipe involved and rest on undisturbed ground. Thrust blocks are not required where fittings are installed with joint restraints.

Part III – EXECUTION

3.1 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Verify water supply location, size and pressure.
- B. Inspect site to ensure that it is free of large rocks, plant material, and construction debris.
- C. Verify that the site has been rough graded to the proper subgrade elevations.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Set stakes or flags to identify proposed sprinkler locations. Obtain Landscape Architect's approval before excavation.

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Refer to Part 2 of this Section for detailed specifications for pipe and fittings products listed below. Use pipe, tube, fittings, and joining methods according to the following applications. Piping in pits and aboveground may be joined with flanges instead of joints indicated.
- B. Pressure Piping Underground: Use the following:
 - 1. 3-inches and smaller: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe, and schedule 40, PVC plastic socket-type pipe fittings and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. 4-inches and larger: Class 200 PVC plastic pipe with flanged or deep socket cast iron fittings with joint restraints.
- C. Circuit Piping: Use the following:
 - 1. All Sizes: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe, and schedule 40, PVC plastic socket-type pipe fittings and solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Branches and Offsets at Sprinkler and Devices: Schedule 80 PVC plastic pipe with threaded ends and schedule 80 PVC plastic threaded fittings and threaded joints.
- E. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe, and schedule 40, PVC plastic socket-type pipe fittings and solvent-cemented joints.
- F. Sleeves: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe, and schedule 40, PVC plastic socket-type pipe fittings and solvent-cemented joints.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Flanged Joints: Align flanges and install gaskets. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening. Use lubricant on bolt threads.
- B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipes with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1, apply tape or joint compound, and apply wrench to valve ends into which pipes are being threaded.
- C. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Construct joints between underground AWWA-type, cast-iron valves and NPS PVC pipe; with elastomeric seals that fit pipe diameter and valve ends; and lubricant, according to ASTM D 3139.
- D. PVC Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Construction joints according to ASTM D 2672 and ASTM D 2855.
 - 1. Handling of Solvent Cements, Primers, and Cleaners: Comply with procedures in ASTM F 402 for safe handling when joining plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cements.

3.5 PIPING SYSTEMS – COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings indicated general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, and in other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping at a uniform slope of 6-inches per 100-feet (1:200) minimum, down to drain points.

- C. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- E. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- G. Piping Connections: Except as otherwise indicated make piping connections as specified below.
 - 1. Install unions, in piping 2-inches (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having 2-inch (DN 50) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping 2½-inches (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
 - 3. Install dielectric fittings to connect piping of dissimilar metals.

3.6 TRENCHES:

- A. Trenches shall be dug as wide and deep as necessary to properly place the sprinkling system according to the requirements herein. Any rock uncovered in this excavation shall not be left in the backfill. All excess rock shall be removed from the site by this Contractor and legally disposed of off the property. All trenches shall be backfilled and compacted to insure no settling of the surface, after the lawn is planted.
- B. If backfill soil is rocky or lumpy, protect the pipe and the pipe conduit with 8” of sand or loose, rock free, soil under, over and on sides of pipe. Avoid putting large rocks against pipe during backfilling operation.
- C. All trenches must be compacted to 90% in 6” lifts and watered in. Lines from control valves shall be installed after topsoil is in place and properly graded.
- D. This Contractor, in placing the sprinkling lines, etc., may uncover material not suitable for finished grading. This material shall be removed from the site by this Contractor. After the installation of the lines, the finished grading shall be smoothed over and restored to its original condition, using additional topsoil at this Contractor's expense, if this is necessary. The upper 6” of topsoil removed in the excavation of trenches for pipeline shall be conserved and kept separate from subsoil and reinstalled without mixing with other soil.
- E. Trenches where more than one pipe is to be installed, a distance of 6” is to be maintained between each pipe.
- F. All trenches are to be 12” away from all curbs, buildings and sidewalks.

3.7 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install underground polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe according to ASTM D 2774.
- B. Lay piping on solid sub-base, uniformly sloped without humps or depressions.

1. Slope circuit piping down toward drain valve minimum of ½-inch in 10-feet (1:240).
 2. Install polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in dry weather when temperature is above 40 deg. F (4 deg. C). Allow joints to cure at least 24-hours at temperature above 40 deg. F (4 deg. C) before testing, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Drain Pockets: Excavate to sizes indicated. Backfill with cleaned gravel and crushed stone, graded from 3-inches (75 mm) to ¾-inch (19mm) minimum, drain material to 12-inches (300 mm) below grade. Cover drain material with sheet of ASTM D 226, Type II, asphalt-saturated felt and backfill remainder with excavated material. Drain pocket to be minimum 6 cubic feet.
- D. Minimum Cover: Provide following minimum cover over top of buried piping:
1. Pressure Piping: Greater depth of minimum of 24-inches (600 mm) below finished grade.
 2. Circuit Piping: 15-inches (380 mm).
 3. Drain Piping: 24 inches (380 mm).
 4. Sleeves: 24-inches (600 mm).
5. Install piping under sidewalks and paving in sleeves.
- 3.8 MANUAL FLUSH VALVES:
- A. These valves serve to provide flushing during installation and in case of major breaks or contaminations in the system. They shall be installed one for every auto line flush valve, at grade and directly adjacent to the auto flush valves in a separate box.
- 3.9 VALVE APPLICATIONS
- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, following requirements apply:
1. Buried Valves 3-inches (DN 80) and Larger: AWWA, gate valves, non-rising stem, with stem nut and valve box.
 2. Buried Valves 2-inches (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze-body, curb stop, with tee head, service box and shutoff rod.
- 3.10 VALVE INSTALLATION
- A. Valves: Install underground valves in valve boxes.
1. Install valves and polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe with restrained, gasketed joints.
- B. Curb Stops: Install underground curb stops in service boxes.
- C. Control and Ball Valves: Install in valve control valve boxes, arranged for easy adjustment and removal. Install unions with one (1) on upstream side at each valve manifold.
- 3.11 FLOW SENSOR
- A. Install the flow sensor as per the detail and the manufacturers' literature and recommendations.

3.12 PRESSURE REGULATOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install pressure regulators with shutoff valve and strainer on inlet and pressure gage on outlet. Install shutoff valve on.

3.13 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Sprinklers: Flush circuit piping with full head of water and install sprinklers after hydrostatic test is complete.
 - 1. Install lawn sprinklers at manufacturer's recommended heights.
 - 2. Install shrubbery sprinklers at heights indicated.
 - 3. Locate part-circle sprinklers to maintain a minimum distance of 12-inches (400 mm) from walls and 2-inches (50 mm) from other boundaries, unless otherwise indicated.

3.14 AUTOMATIC CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers, wireless receivers, and all specified equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated.
- B. Install controllers in plastic indoor cabinet.
- C. Run one extra wire from the controller to each group of valves for future use and stub into the valve box. Run extra wires to future area as shown on the drawings.
- D. Install control wiring in same trench with mainline piping. When not in mainline trench, install in PVC conduit.
- E. Connect controller to power source – see electrical

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform hydrostatic test of piping and valves before backfilling trenches. Piping may be tested in sections to expedite work.
 - 1. Cap and subject the piping system to a static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above the operating pressure without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for 4-hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 2. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest system or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 3. Notify Architect 24 hour in advance of pressure testing so test may be observed.

3.16 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Flush dirt and debris from piping before installing sprinklers and other devices.
- B. Adjust automatic control valves to provide flow rate of rated operating pressure required for each sprinkler circuit.

- C. Carefully adjust lawn sprinklers so they will be flush with, or not more than ½-inch (13 mm) above, finish grade after completion of landscape work.
- D. Adjust settings of controllers and automatic control valves.

3.17 COMMISSIONING

- A. Starting Procedures: Follow manufacturer's written procedures. If no procedures are prescribed by manufacturers, proceed as follows:
 - 1. Verify that specialty vales and their accessories have been installed correctly and operate correctly.
 - 2. Verify that specified test of piping are complete.
 - 3. Check that sprinklers and devices are correct type.
 - 4. Check that damaged sprinklers and devices have been replaced with new materials.
 - 5. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 6. Adjust operating controls.
- B. Operational Testing: Perform operational testing after hydrostatic testing is completed, backfill is in place, and sprinklers are adjusted to final position.
- C. Provide irrigation system layout and diagram with water zones clearly identified. Layout to be color coded with a maximum of 5 colors for easy legibility. Record water budget for each irrigation control zone and current settings. Provide laminated copy and mount near controller. Verify location with Architect.

3.18 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Demonstrate to Architect that system meets coverage requirements and that automatic controls function properly.
- B. Demonstrate to Owner's maintenance personnel operation of equipment, sprinklers, specialties, and accessories. Review operating and maintenance information.
- C. Provide 7-days' written notice in advance of demonstration.

END OF SECTION 32840

SECTION 32 93 00 - LANDSCAPE PLANTING

PART I – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The extent of the landscaping development work is shown on the drawings and in schedules. This work includes:
 - 1. Obtaining and paying for permit fees, inspections and tests required for the installation of landscape planting.
 - 2. Providing and placement of all plant material, topsoil, mulch, sod, and miscellaneous materials and maintenance of landscape planting and associated guarantees.
 - 3. Attendance at Pre-Construction Conference

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 328400 - Irrigation Systems

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Plants shall conform to names indicated on the drawings and plant list and to the nomenclature listed in the American Joint Committee on Horticultural Nomenclature’s “Standardized Plant Names”, latest edition.
- B. Size, quality, handling, planting and maintenance of plant materials shall be in accordance with “American Standard for Nursery Stock”, ANSI Z60-1996, American Association of Nurserymen, Inc. Minimum acceptable sizes of plants, measured before pruning with branches in normal position, shall conform to measurements specified in the Plant Materials Key.
- C. Plants shall be subject to the Landscape Architect’s inspection and approval at place of growth or upon delivery for conformity to specification requirements. Such approval shall neither preclude right of rejection upon delivery at the site or during progress of work, nor right of rejection at the site due to damage suffered in handling or transportation. Inspection of plants by the Landscape Architect before digging shall be at the option and expense of the Owner.
 - 1. All plant material will be inspected again at time of final inspection and once again at the end of the warranty period.
 - 2. Any plant material found to be unacceptable at any inspection shall be immediately removed and replaced.
- D. Contractor will provide and pay for materials testing. Testing agency shall be acceptable to the Landscape Architect.
 - 1. Test representative samples of materials proposed for use. Materials used in the work shall be the same materials as tested. Do not use proposed material in the work until test reports have been reviewed by the Landscape Architect and approval obtained to proceed with plant excavations.
- E. Test reports: Provide the following test results of the imported topsoil:

1. Topsoil:
 - a. Mechanical analysis.
 - b. Percentage of organic content.
 - c. Recommendations on the type and quantity of soil nutrient additives required to bring nutrients to a satisfactory level for specified plants.
 - d. Recommendations on the type and quantity of soil additives required to bring the pH of soil to a value of 5.5-7.0 (unless otherwise noted).
 - e. SAR
 - f. Soluble Salts

F. Landscape work shall be done by a single firm specializing in landscape construction work with minimum 5 years experience completing 5 projects of similar size and complexity.

1. Contractor to provide list of past projects completed during last 3 years at time of first bid proposal.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit topsoil test reports of the proposed imported topsoil.
- B. Submit topsoil test reports of the stockpiled topsoil.
- C. Submit soil amendment material test reports.
- D. Submit a label from the manufacturer's container certifying fertilizer content.
- E. Submit samples of proposed mulch for use in planting beds.
- F. Submit complete written maintenance instruction at least 10 days prior to end of maintenance period. Include all requirements for proper care, development and maintenance of planting.
- G. Submit within 20 days of award of the bid to general contractor a planting schedule stating sources from which said Contractor can provide the plant materials in the quantity and size indicated on the Drawings.
 1. Substitutions for plant material that is not obtainable may be proposed in writing prior to bid. Submit written statement from plant materials supplier(s) with proposal for equivalent material for evaluation and acceptance prior to bid.
- H. Submit photographs and other descriptions of all plant material that is located outside of a 90 mile radius of project location. Provide specific growing location address.
- I. Submit contractor's Guarantee Form for Landscape Architect's review.
- J. Submit anticipated planting schedule.

1.5 VERIFICATION OF DIMENSIONS AND QUANTITIES

- A. All scaled dimensions are approximate. Before proceeding with any work, the Contractor shall carefully check and verify all dimensions and quantities, and shall immediately inform the

Landscape Architect of any discrepancy between the information on the Drawings and actual conditions, refraining from doing any work on said areas until given approval to do so by the Landscape Architect.

- B. Plant quantities listed on the Drawings are for the convenience of the Contractor only and are not guaranteed. All planting indicated on the Drawings will be required.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare, transport and handle plants to ensure protection against injury. Cover all plants while transporting to the site.
- B. Deliver plants with legible waterproof identification labels.
- C. Temporary storage of new material:
 - 1. No new plants shall remain in temporary storage over the winter or summer. Plants that are not planted immediately shall be protected as follows:
 - 2. Plants shall remain on the site of the work no longer than three days prior to being planted or placed in storage.
 - 3. The earth balls shall be kept moist and their solidity carefully preserved. To prevent drying out or freezing, store plants in a compact group with suitable mulch material placed around and between the balls so they are completely covered. The method of storage of plants and mulch material shall be acceptable to the Landscape Architect.
 - 4. Provide irrigation to stored plants.
- D. Do not use topsoil in frozen or muddy conditions.
- E. Packaged materials shall be delivered in factory labeled containers showing weight, content and manufacturer. Protect all materials from damage and deterioration during delivery and storage at site.
- F. Harvest, deliver and install sod within 24 hours.

1.7 GRADING

- A. Examine the subgrade, verify the elevations of topsoil, planting mix or mulch. Observe the conditions under which work is to be performed, and notify the Landscape Architect of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not begin landscape work until unsatisfactory conditions have been improved.

1.8 EXCAVATION

- A. When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or obstructions, notify the Landscape Architect before planting.

1.9 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Determine location of underground utilities and perform work in a manner which will avoid possible damage. Hand excavate, as required, to minimize possibility of damage to underground utilities. The Contractor shall have the area "Blue Staked" prior to digging. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to repair or replace any damage caused by its workers at no expense to the Owner.

1.10 PLANTING SCHEDULE

- A. Before bidding each bidder shall investigate sources of supply and determine availability of all plants specified on the planting list in size, variety and quantity. Failure to take this precaution will not relieve the successful bidder from responsibility as a contractor to furnish and install all plant material in strict accordance with the contract without additional expense to the Owner.
- B. Prepare a proposed planting schedule for approval by the Landscape Architect. Schedule the dates for each type of landscape work during the normal seasons for such work in the area of the site. Correlate with specified maintenance periods to provide maintenance throughout the specified time period. Once accepted, revise dates only as approved in writing, after documentation of reasons for delays.
- C. Proceed with and complete the landscape work as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within the seasonal limitations for each kind of landscape work required.

1.11 ESTABLISHMENT, MAINTENANCE, REPLACEMENT, AND GUARANTEE

- A. The establishment period shall begin at the time that the planting phase of the work is completed, inspection and written notice is given and shall continue until substantial line. See Total Site Maintenance section 3.13.
- B. Maintenance shall include but not be limited to watering, weeding, pruning, spraying, adjusting of guys, and lawn maintenance as described herein.
- C. Mow lawn as soon as the sod is tall enough to cut. Do not remove more than 40% of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not mow when grass is wet. Mow grass at 2-3" high.
- D. Apply fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry. Apply a 20-0-0 fertilizer at label rate.
- E. Remove and replace trees found to be unacceptable at the time of substantial completion and at any time during the guarantee period. Replacements shall be made during the guarantee period. Replacements shall be made during the growing season and shall comply with all requirements and specifications. Replacement shall also match specified trees in specie, size, and condition. Any delaying the completion of any item of work in the planting operation which extends the planting into more than one season shall extend the guarantee period accordingly.
- F. Any plants that settle below or rise above the desired finished grades during establishment or guarantee period shall be reset at the proper grades.
- G. Guarantee a close knit stand of grass by watering, mowing, regrading and resodding eroded areas and otherwise maintaining lawn area to the satisfaction of the Landscape Architect, until final

acceptance. Any areas, which fail to show a thick, vigorous, healthy grass stand, shall be reseeded at Contractor's expense with the same seed or sod originally specified. Resod or reseed as required until all affected areas are accepted by the Landscape Architect.

- H. Guarantee all planting for one year following signature of Owner on the final contract payment application.
- I. The Contractor will not be responsible for plants destroyed or lost due to occupancy of the project, or vandalism on the parts of others or if the failure of any plant material can be proven to the Landscape Architect to be beyond the control of the Contractor.
- J. At the end of the guarantee period a final inspection of all planting included in this contract will be made by the Landscape Architect. At that time any plant found not to be in a healthy growing condition, broken, damaged, or not exhibiting the desired characteristics of the plant shall be noted. These noted plants shall be removed as specified above.

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.1 TOPSOIL

- A. Topsoil for lawns, trees, and shrub planting operations shall be imported to the site.
- B. Topsoil for seed areas shall be harvested and stockpiled on site.
 - 1. Topsoil shall be free from debris such as rocks, roots, sticks and clods.
 - 2. Imported topsoil shall conform to the following topsoil guidelines, contractor to submit testing reports that verify conformance to the following acceptable characteristics.
 - a. Soluble Salts <4
 - b. PH 5.5-8.2
 - c. Sand <70%
 - d. Silt <70%
 - e. Clay <30%
 - f. Texture Class L, SiL, SCL, SL, CL, SiCL
 - g. Organic Matter ≥1%
 - h. Coarse Fragments > 2mm dia. ≤5%
 - i. SAR 3-7 for SiL, SiCL CL, 3-10 for SCL, SL, L
 - j. Topsoil shall not contain rocks larger than 1 ½” in diameter.
 - k. Topsoil report shall also contain fertilizer recommendations.
- C. Topsoil shall not be used for planting operations while in a frozen or muddy condition.

2.2 PEAT MOSS

- A. Peat moss used in planting soil preparation: High quality pure Canadian sphagnum peat with a pH value not less than 3.5 nor greater than 6.0 at 25 degrees C. The ash content shall be not more than 10% and water holding capacity shall be not less than 800%.

2.3 BACKFILL

- A. Backfill soil mixture shall be the following materials well mixed in the specified proportions, which are by volume: 1 part Peat moss, 4 parts topsoil.

2.4 COMMERCIAL FERTILIZER – LAWNS

- A. Fertilizer for planting shall be 4-6-4 spread over the topsoil prior to planting.
- B. Fertilizer for lawns shall be commercial fertilizer, uniform in composition, dry and free flowing. It shall contain the following percentage by weight: 20% of nitrogen, 1% of phosphoric acid, 8% of potash. Fertilizer shall be delivered mixed as specified in standard-sized bags, showing weight, analysis of content, and name of manufacturer as required by state regulations. If soil tests recommend variance from these percentages obtain Landscape Architect's approval prior to applications.

2.5 COMMERCIAL FERTILIZER – TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Fertilizer for trees, shrubs and ground cover planting areas shall be slow release type, Osmocote 18-6-12 used according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

2.6 TURFGRASS SOD

- A. Certified Number 1 Quality/Premium sod complying with TPI's "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials".
- B. Turfgrass sod shall be machine cut at a uniform soil thickness of 0.60 inch. Standard size sections of turfgrass sod shall be strong enough that it can be picked up and handled without damage.
- C. Turfgrass sod shall be harvested, delivered and installed within 24 hours.

2.7 PLANT MATERIAL

- A. All plants are subject to approval regarding size, health, quantity, character, etc. by the Landscape Architect.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and plant all plants shown on the Drawings, as specified and in quantities as shown. Quantities if shown, are included for the convenience of the Contractor only and the Contractor shall be required to furnish all individual plants in quantities actually located on the Drawings. Each bidder shall investigate the sources of supply and satisfy himself that he can supply all of the plants mentioned in the planting lists in size, variety and quality noted and specified before submitting his bid. Failure to take this precaution will not relieve the successful bidder from his responsibility as Contractor for the furnishing and installing of all the plant material in strict accordance with the contract requirements without additional expense to the Owner.
- C. All plants shall have been grown in nurseries which have been inspected or do not require inspection by the State Department of Agriculture and have complied with all the regulations thereof, in accordance with good horticulture practice.

- D. Plant names used in the Plant Material Key conform to “Standardized Plant Names” by the American Joint Committee of Horticulture Nomenclature, except in cases not covered therein. In these instances, the custom of the nursery trade is followed.
- E. Plant materials shall conform to the Plant Material Key shown on plans and to the requirements of the “Horticultural Standards” of the American Association of Nurserymen as to kind, size, age, etc. and shall be typical first-class representatives of their species or variety, and shall have a normal habit of growth, unless specified otherwise. They shall be sound, healthy and vigorous with a well-developed root system.
- F. All plants shall have been grown under climatic condition similar to those in the locality of the project for at least two (2) years and shall have been transplanted or root pruned at least once in the last two (2) years.
- G. All plants shall be number one quantity specimens and shall have a uniform matching caliper, size and canopy, be symmetrical with standard height, spread and branching patterns. No park grade plant material is acceptable.
 - 1. Trees shall have straight single leaders with symmetrical primary branching and considerable well spaced secondary branching filling out the head with no gaps.
- H. Plants shall be marked for identification. Each bundle of plants and at least 25% of each species and variety of separate plants in any one (1) shipment shall have legible labels securely attached before delivery to the site.
- I. All trees shall be measured when their branches are in their normal position. Height and spread dimensions specified refer to the main body of the plant and not from branch or root tip to tip. No trees which have had their leaders cut, or so damaged that cutting is necessary, will be accepted. Measure caliper of all trees 4” and larger 12” above the surface of the ground. Measure all trees less than 4” in caliper 6” above finish grade.
- J. All plants shall be symmetrical and shall conform to the size, age and condition as specified on the plant list shown on the Drawings. Exceptions are as follows:
 - 1. Plants larger than specified in the plant list may be used if approved by the Architect; but use of such plant shall not increase the contract price. If the use of larger plants is approved, the spread of roots and ball earth shall be increased in proportion to the size of the plant. Bare root plants furnished in size greater than specified shall be balled and burlapped when required by the Landscape Architect.
 - 2. Where caliper or other dimensions of any plant materials are omitted from the Plant Material Key, it shall be understood that these plant materials shall be normal stock for type listed and at a minimum, the average size of all the material listed.
- K. Plants shall not be pruned prior to delivery except as authorized by the Landscape Architect. In no case shall trees be topped before delivery.
- L. No plants shall be dug or delivered to the site until the required inspections have been made and the plants or samples approved.

- M. Dig balled and burlapped (BB) plants with firm, natural balls of earth, of diameter not less than specified and of sufficient depth to include all fibrous and feeding roots. No plant moved with a ball will be accepted if the ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operations, except on special approval of the Architect.
- N. Roots or balls or all plants shall be adequately protected at all times from sun and/or drying winds.
 - 1. All balled and burlapped plants which cannot be planted immediately upon delivery shall be set on the ground and shall be well protected with soil, wet moss, or other acceptable material.
 - 2. No plant shall be bound with wire or rope at any time so as to damage the bark or break branches.
- O. Plants marked “cans”, “pots” or “other container” on the plant list shall have been grown in the containers for a minimum of six (6) months and a maximum of two years. Roots shall fill the containers but show no evidence of being or having been root bound. Plants shall not be picked up or moved by stem or branches, but shall be lifted and handled from the sides of the containers.
- P. Trees shall have straight trunks and all old abrasions and cuts shall be completely callused over.

2.8 GUYING AND STAKING MATERIAL

- A. Tree stakes: 2” round wood post, 8’ long.
- B. Hose: High quality braided rubber or plastic hose, 3/4” diameter and suitable length (Color Black).
- C. Wire: 12 gauge galvanized steel.
- D. Guying cable: galvanized steel, #9 gauge, thimbles and clips shall be used for connections and splices.
- E. Turnbuckles: Galvanized or zinc dip painted with an 8” lengthwise opening fitted with eye bolts and spot welded or fitted with a locking device to prevent vandalism.
- F. Guying stakes: 2” x 2” x 4’ notched hardwood.

2.9 ANTI-TRANSPIRANT

- A. Anti-TRANSPIRANT solution for horticultural spray application. Use Bio-Plex, by Bioplex Organics, Inc. (800-441-3573).

2.10 WATER

- A. Potable water or secondary water from public purveyor.

2.11 TREE WRAP

- A. Tree wrap shall be kraft paper tree wrap, 3” wide. Wrap shall be resistant to weather degradation and require no maintenance and must stretch as the girth of the trunk increases over time.

2.12 MULCHES

- A. Decorative Stone Mulch: Washed, crushed angular gravel, 3/4"-1". Submit color samples for approval of owner and Landscape Architect.

2.13 WEED BARRIER FABRIC

- A. Dewitt Pro 5 Weed Barrier. Fabric shall be UV resistant, woven spunbond needle punch, polypropylene, wt. 5 oz, per square yard, color black.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 COORDINATION

- A. The contractor shall coordinate his work with other contractors on site, and shall cooperate to the fullest extent to see that the work is completed in a timely and workmanship like manner.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF TOPSOIL

- A. Prior to the installation of any topsoil, Contractor shall inspect the existing subgrade for compliance to the specifications regarding elevation, slope, grade and cleanliness. Any deficiency shall be reported to the Landscape Architect. Work begun in any area will acknowledge acceptance of area for Landscape planting.
- B. When contract operations have been completed to a point where planting areas will not be disturbed, subgrade shall be cleaned free of waste material of all kinds. In all planted areas dig out all to weeds by their roots and remove from site. Scarify and pulverize the subgrade to a depth of not less than 6" inches. Scarification shall be completed in all areas that are to be planted, or sodded.
- C. Do not place topsoil over subgrade that is frozen or damp.
- D. Mulched shrub/tree planting areas: Dig planting pits for trees and shrubs. Mix topsoil with 1 part peatmoss and 4 parts topsoil. Fill planting pits with amended topsoil. Scarify and mix the topsoil around the edges of the planting pit with the native soil. Spread fertilizer as recommended by topsoil report. Allow for mulch layer.
- E. Lawn areas: Spread the topsoil to a minimum depth of 6" and apply compost at a rate of 3 cubic yards per 1000 sf and fertilizer recommended by the topsoil report. Till to a depth of 6". Spread planting fertilizer over topsoil prior to planting. Allow 1-1/2" for sod thickness.
- F. Shrub Areas: Spread the topsoil to a minimum depth of 12" and apply compost at a rate of 3 cubic yards per 1000 sf and fertilizer recommended by the topsoil report. Till to a depth of 12".
- G. Topsoil shall be rolled by a hand roller on small areas. After rolling at a weight of 150-200 pounds per linear foot of roller. Topsoil shall be compacted to between 80 and 85%. The grade shall again be graded to the specified grade with a smooth surface. Large areas shall be graded by passing a land plane in three different directions over the entire area to be planted.

H. Surface drainage shall be insured, and if shown, shall be directed in the manner indicated on the drawings by molding the surface to facilitate the run-off water. Fill low spots and pockets with topsoil and grade to drain properly.

3.3 The Landscape Architect shall approve the finish grading prior to application of seed, sod or plant material. Make minor adjustments to finish grades at the direction of the Landscape Architect.

3.4 SODDING

A. Place sod after fine grading has been completed. The top soil and subbase shall be moist and firm. Apply one (1) application of planting fertilizer 4-6-4 at the rate of 3 lbs. per 1,000 sq. ft. just prior to the laying of the sod.

B. The surface on which lawn is to be installed shall be firm and free of footprints, depressions or undulations of any kind. The surface shall be free of all rocks larger than 1/2" in diameter and all sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous materials.

C. Sod may be placed at any time when the ground is not frozen. Sod shall be cut and laid on site within a 48 hour period following harvest. Install butting the edges and ends together tightly. Do not leave gaps or stretch sod. Stagger joints.

D. The joints shall be closely laid and filled with a mixture of grass seed and screened topsoil at the rate of two (2) pounds of seed to each cubic yard of topsoil. It shall be thoroughly tamped to a true and even surface at the required finished grade.

E. Roll firmly but lightly, tamp with suitable wooden or metal tamper, all new sod sufficiently to set or press sod into underlying soil.

F. Protection of the newly laid sod shall be the complete responsibility of the Contractor. Provide acceptable visual barriers by means of barricades set at appropriate distances and strings or tapes between the barriers as an indication of new work. Restore any damaged areas caused by others, erosion or vehicular traffic until such a time as the lawn is accepted by the Owner.

G. Saturate sod with fine water spray within one hour of planting. During first week, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) below sod.

3.5 PREPARATION FOR PLANTING TREES AND SHRUBS

A. All sprinkler system work and finish grading shall be approved by the Landscape Architect prior to any planting. No planting will be done without direct supervision of the Landscape Architect.

B. Locate the exact placement of all trees and secure approval of the Landscape Architect and Owner prior to the digging of any holes. Refer to the Drawings for the sizes and preparation of holes. Prepare all holes according to the details on the Drawings.

3.6 TREE AND SHRUB PLANTING

- A. Prior to planting, fill excavated planting hole with water and allow to percolate out. If, after 24 hours, the water has not percolated out of the pit, notify the Landscape Architect. Do not plant until the problem has been corrected.
- B. The planting holes from the bottom to the top of the opening should be the same depth as the root ball. Plants must be placed plumb and straight in the planting hole. The tree planting hole depth shall be determined so that the tree may be set at finish grade, using the top of the root ball as a guide.
- C. All tree holes shall be backfilled with specified backfill in 12" inch lifts and settled and tamped to minimize any settling of the tree.
- D. When the root ball is partially backfilled and compacted all burlap, ropes, or wire baskets shall be removed from the sides of the root ball. No burlap shall be pulled from under the root balls of the plants. The plants shall then be watered with a hose to completely soak the roots and the backfilled soil mixture.
- E. Fertilize with tree and shrub fertilizer according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- F. Containers shall be removed from the root balls by cutting with cutters. Do not damage root ball by using trunk or main stem as a handle.
- G. All plants shall be thoroughly watered immediately following planting. This shall mean full and thorough saturation of all backfill in the pits and beds during the same day of planting. Water shall only be applied by an open end hose at very low pressure to avoid air pockets, injury or washing. When planted, watered, and fully settled, trees shall be vertical.
- H. The Contractor shall water newly planted trees twice a week for eight weeks. A minimum of five (5) gallons of water per tree is required.
- I. The amount of pruning shall be limited to the minimum necessary to remove dead or injured twigs and branches. All cuts, scars and bruises shall be properly treated according to the direction of the Landscape Architect. Proper pruning techniques shall be used. Do NOT leave stubs and do NOT cut the leader branch. Improper pruning shall be cause for rejection of the plant material.
- J. A 4" deep saucer shall be formed at the edge of plant pit. Water the same day as planted.
- K. Saucer shall not be required when planted where edging is required around plant pits. When trees are planted in lawn areas cut a neat opening in sod that is 36" diameter.
- L. Within 48 hours of planting each plant remove all undesirable material from the surface of the planting beds, including all rocks over the size of 1 1/2" diameter. Install the specified mulch to a uniform depth of 3" in the entire planting beds and all tree basins.
- M. This Contractor shall dispose of, off the site, all soil excavated from tree and shrub pits.

3.7 TREE STAKING AND GUYING

- A. Staking of trees shall be done immediately after they are planted. Plants shall stand plumb after staking. All stakes shall be removed by this Contractor at the completion of the guarantee period.

- B. Trees 2 1/2" caliper or less shall be supported by two wood stakes placed diametrically opposite at perimeter line of ball and to sufficient depth to hold tree rigid. Stakes shall be driven vertically. Tree shall be wired to each stake as indicated on staking details. Project tree with rubber hose over wires at points of contact.

3.8 TREE WRAPPING

- A. All trees shall be wrapped with tree wrap. Wrap shall be applied to trunks immediately after planting to protect bark against winter injury caused by diurnal temperature fluctuations. Wrap shall be resistant to weather degradation and require no maintenance and must stretch as the girth of the trunk increases over time.
 - 1. Starting as low as possible, wrap tree wrap in a smooth spiral to assure overlapping each previous wrap by about 1/4".
 - 2. Continue wrapping up the trunk to just below the second scaffold branches. Wrapping the crotches is optional.
 - 3. Tie off tree wrap with a half hitch knot.
 - 4. Cover the base of the tree and the first wrap of tree wrap with soil.

3.9 CLEAN UP AND PROTECTION

- A. During landscape work store materials and equipment where directed. Keep pavement clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect landscape areas, work and materials from damage due to operations by other contractors and trades, trespassers. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair or replace damaged landscape work as directed.
- C. Keep the site free from accumulation of waste material. At the time of completion, all areas must be swept and washed clean and all rubbish removed to the satisfaction of the Landscape Architect.

3.10 TOTAL SITE MAINTENANCE

- 1. As part of this Contract, this Contractor shall be responsible for the continuous maintenance of all landscape areas, i.e., weeding, watering, mowing, fertilization, etc. from the time of planting until the Project Date of Substantial Completion. If any planting area is deemed not to be substantially complete by the Project Date of Substantial Completion, penalties will apply and the contractor shall be required to provide all required maintenance after the project substantial completion date until final acceptance.
- B. Maintain plants in a vigorous, thriving condition by watering, cultivating, weeding, pruning, spraying and other necessary operations. No trees or shrubs will be accepted unless they are healthy and show satisfactory foliage conditions. Plants shall be maintained through the length of the total site maintenance period.
 - 1. All planted areas shall be cultivated at least every two (2) weeks and raked smooth, to present a neat appearance.
 - 2. Spray as required to keep plant materials free of disease and insects.

3. Replace mulch to maintain specified depth.
 4. All new tree and shrub plantings shall be watered thoroughly at least twice a week during the maintenance period.
- C. The Contractor shall instruct the Owner as to the watering requirements and shall monitor such operations at all times. The Contractor shall be held responsible for failure to monitor the watering requirements and shall be held responsible to replace any or all plants that are lost due to improper application of water.
- D. Lawns shall be maintained for as much time as necessary to establish over the entire lawn a close stand of grass of the varieties specified, free of weeds and undesirable coarse, native grasses, but in no case less than four growing months or two mowings after substantial completion of landscape and irrigation work.
- E. All lawns shall be fertilized every three (3) weeks with two (2) pounds of 16-16-8 commercial fertilizer per 1000 sq ft until the end of the maintenance period required. It shall be the responsibility of this Contractor to notify the Landscape Architect and Owner in writing 48 hours prior to fertilizing to provide visual verification of work.
- F. Maintenance shall include, in addition to the above, cleaning, edging and repair to erosion and all other necessary work of maintenance. Sidewalks and other paved areas shall be kept clean when planting and maintenance are in progress.
- G. Any and all sprinkler lines broken or disrupted during the construction and maintenance period shall be replaced to proper working order and be acceptable to the Owner.

3.11 FINAL INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Inspection will be made of the entire site periodically and at the conclusion of the maintenance period required.
- B. The landscape work may be inspected for acceptance in parts agreeable to the Landscape Architect, provided the work offered for inspection is complete, including maintenance and that the area comprises one unit or area of substantial size.
- C. Written notice requesting final inspection shall be submitted to the Landscape Architect at least ten (10) days prior to the anticipated inspection date.
- D. Where inspected landscape work does not comply with the requirement, replace rejected work and continue specified maintenance until re-inspected by the Landscape Architect and found to be acceptable. Remove rejected plants and materials promptly from the project site.
- E. Final Acceptance: The work under this contract will be accepted upon written approval by the Landscape Architect and the Owner, on the satisfactory completion of all work, including maintenance.
- F. All work done under this contract shall be left in good order to the satisfaction of the Owner and the Landscape Architect and the Contractor shall without additional expense, replace any trees, etc. which develop defects or die within one year of the substantial completion.
 1. A written guarantee that covers the above provisions shall be signed by the Contractor and delivered to the Landscape Architect upon acceptance of the work.

2. The guarantee shall not be binding upon the Contractor if any failure should be proved to the satisfaction of the Landscape Architect to result from circumstances or negligence of parties over whom the Contractor has no control.

3.12 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Drawings shall be furnished to the Landscape Architect at the time of the substantial completion inspection before a letter documenting Substantial Completion for the landscape planting will be issued.

END OF SECTION 329300

SECTION 33 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping joining materials.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Sleeves.
 - 5. Identification devices.
 - 6. Grout.
 - 7. Flowable fill.
 - 8. Piped utility demolition.
 - 9. Piping system common requirements.
 - 10. Equipment installation common requirements.
 - 11. Painting.
 - 12. Concrete bases.
 - 13. Metal supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- D. DI: Ductile Iron pipe

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Dielectric fittings.
 - 2. Identification devices.

- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8-inch-thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- F. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.2 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 - 2. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.
- C. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 and Larger:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - f. Viking Johnson.
 - 3. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Spears Manufacturing Co.
 - 3. Description: PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Spears Manufacturing Co.

F. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Non-pressure Drainage Piping:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company.
 - d. Plastic Oddities.

- G. Description: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EpcO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 and smaller.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epcos Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
3. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
3. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum.
 - b. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - c. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - d. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
3. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 and smaller.

- a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F
- b. End Connections: Threaded.

F. Dielectric Nipples:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corporation.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
- 3. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- D. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 33 Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
 - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.

2.6 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.7 FLOWABLE FILL

- A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, portland.
 - 2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft.
 - 3. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
 - 4. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine.
 - 5. Admixture: ASTM C 618, fly-ash mineral.
 - 6. Water: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
 - 7. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPED UTILITY DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Dielectric flanges or dielectric flange kits.

B. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric couplings or dielectric nipples or nipples.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Dielectric nipples.
3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Dielectric nipples or dielectric flange kits.
4. NPS 10 and NPS 12: Dielectric flange kits.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 33 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- I. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- J. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- K. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - a. PVC or Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
- L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- M. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 33 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.
- I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 5. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 6. PVC to ABS Non-pressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.

- L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- M. Plastic Non-pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- N. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- O. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

3.6 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

3.7 PAINTING

- A. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
 - 1. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot non-insulated piping. Place direct bury marker 12-18 inches above top of pipe but not less than 12-inches below finish grade.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 33 05 00

SECTION 33 11 00 - WATER UTILITY PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Codes and Standards:
 - 1. Plumbing Code Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of National Standard Plumbing Code pertaining to selection and installation of potable water system materials and products.
 - 2. Water Purveyor Compliance: Comply with requirements of Purveyor supplying water to project, obtain required permits and inspections.
 - 3. NFPA Compliance: Install fire water systems in accordance with NFPA 24 "Standard for Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances".
 - 4. Local Fire Department/Marshall Regulations: Comply with governing regulations pertaining to hydrants, including hose unit threading and similar matching of connections.
 - 5. UL Compliance: Provide fire hydrants that comply with UL 246 "Hydrants for Fire-Protection Service" and are listed by UL.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pressure water pipes and fire systems outside the building, with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
 - 2. Pipes and valves.
 - 3. Fire Hydrants.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- B. DI: Ductile Iron pressure pipe.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pressure Rating: 200 psi static water pressure for all pipes and fittings. Pipe joints shall be watertight.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Special pipe fittings.
2. Fire hydrants
3. Valves.
4. Valve boxes and appurtenances.
5. Pipes.
6. Disinfection reports and practices
7. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for fire water system materials and products.
8. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data and parts lists for fire water system materials and products. Include this data, product data, shop drawings, and record drawings in maintenance manual.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

1. Thrust Blocks: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and forces for thrust blocks for each size of pipe and type of bend.

C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping and sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between piping and proximate structures.

D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than **1-inch equals 40 feet** and vertical scale of not less than **1 inch equals 4 feet**. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Water Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service. Coordinate interruptions during weekly meetings and at pre-construction meeting.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work.
 2. Line Markers:
 - a. Allen Systems Inc.
 - b. Seton Name Plate Corp.
 - c. Engineer Approved Equal.
 3. Pipe Strainers:
 - a. "Automatic" Sprinkler Corp. of America; Div. A-T-O Inc.
 - b. Cleveland Gear Co.; Sub of Vesper Corp.
 - c. Grinnell Fire Protection Systems Co., Inc.
 - d. Hersey Products Inc.; Hersey Div.
 - e. Mueller Steam Specialty; Div. of Core Industries Inc.
 - f. Neptune Water Meter Co.
 - g. Rockwell International Corp.; Municipal & Utility Div.
 - h. Rockwood Systems Corp.
 - i. Zurn Industries Inc.; Fluid Handling Div.
 4. Detector Meter: Not Required
 5. Gate Valves:
 - a. American Valve Mfg. Corp.
 - b. American-Darling Valve; Div. of American Cast Iron Pipe Co.
 - c. Clow Corp.; Valve Div.
 - d. Dresser Mfg. Div. of ITT Grinnell Valve Co. Inc.
 - e. Fairbanks Co.
 - f. Kennedy Valve; Div. of ITT Grinnell Valve Co., Inc.
 - g. Stockham Valves & Fittings Inc.
 - h. United Brass Works Inc.
 - i. United States Pipe and Foundry Co.
 - j. Waterous Co.
 6. Check Valves:
 - a. American-Darling Valve; Div. of American Cast Iron Pipe Co.
 - b. Clow Corp.; Valve Corp.
 - c. Fairbanks Co.
 - d. Kennedy Valve; Div. of ITT Grinnell Valve Co., Inc.
 - e. Mueller Co.
 - f. Nibbco Inc.
 - g. Stockham Valves & Fittings Inc.
 - h. Walworth Co.
 - i. Waterous Co.
 7. Yard Hydrants
 - a. Josam Mfg. Co.
 - b. Smith (Jay R.) Mfg. Co.

- c. Zern Industries, Inc.; Hydromechanics Div.
- 8. Fire Hydrants: Approved by authority having jurisdiction.
- 9. Backflow Preventors: Approved by authority having jurisdiction.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Underground –Type Plastic Line Markers: Manufacturer's standard permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed plastic tape, intended for direct-burial service; not less than 6" wide x 4 mils thick. Provide blue tape with black printing reading "CAUTION WATER LINE BURIED BELOW".
- B. Nonmetallic Piping Label: If nonmetallic piping is used for water service, provide engraved plastic laminate, label permanently affixed to main electrical meter panel stating, "THIS STRUCTURE HAS A NONMETALLIC WATER SERVICE".

2.3 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Provide piping materials and factory-fabricated piping products of sizes, types, pressure ratings, and capacities indicated. Where not indicated, provide proper selection as determined by Installer to comply with installation requirements. Provide sizes and types matching piping and equipment connections; provide fittings of materials which match pipe materials used in potable water systems. Where more than one type of materials or products are indicated, selection is Installer's option.
- C. Piping: Provide pipe fittings and accessories of same material and weight/class as pipes, with joining method as indicated.
- D. Ductile Iron Pipe: AWWA A151, Class 50. Flanged Class 53, with cement mortar lining complying with AWWA C104.
 - 1. Fitting: Ductile iron AWWA C110; cement lined AWWA C104; and rubber-gasket joints, AWWA C111, Tar coated on outside and Class 250
- E. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88; type K, soft-annealed temper (for 3/4" to 2" diameter pipe).
- F. PVC Pipe: AWWA C900 Class 200 Pipe for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 - 1. Fittings **NPS 4 to NPS 8**: PVC pressure fittings complying with AWWA C907, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 - 2. Fittings **NPS 10** and Larger: Ductile-iron, compact fittings complying with AWWA C153, for push-on joints and using AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.

2.4 WATER METER

- A. Water Meter, Meter Set and lid will be provided by water purveyor after payment of connection fees.
- B. Contractor to supply concrete meter box and accessories needed to make installation of water meter.

2.5 VALVES

- A. Gate Valves: UL-listed, 175 psi working pressure for 12" and smaller, 150 psi for sizes larger than 12". Threaded, flanged, hub, or other end configurations to suit size of valve and piping connection. Inside screw type for use with indicator post, iron body bronze mounted, non-rising stem, solid wedge disc.
- B. Check Valves: UL-listed, 175 psi working pressure for 2" through 12", 150 psi for sizes larger than 12". Swing type, iron body bronze mounted with metal-to-metal or rubber-faced checks. Threaded, flanged, or hub end, to suit size and piping connections.

2.6 FIRE HYDRANT

- A. Provide cast-iron body fire hydrants, compression type, opening against pressure and closing with pressure, base valve design, 200 psi working pressure, with 1/4" gage tapping and bronze plug in standpipe, conforming to the latest edition of AWWA C-502, "Dry Barrel Fire Hydrants."
- B. Features: Provide the following features:
 - 1. Size: 5" valve opening.
 - 2. Direction to Open Hydrant: Left.
 - 3. Size and Shape of Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon 1-1/2" point to flat.
 - 4. Hose Nozzles: 2-1/2" National Standard Thread cap and chain.
 - 5. Pumper Nozzles: 5" National Standard Thread cap and chain.
 - 6. Depth of Trench: 4'-6".
 - 7. Connection to Main: 6" mechanical joint.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchorages: Provide anchorages for tees, wyes, crosses, plugs, caps, bends, valves, and hydrants. After installation, apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-retarding material to surfaces of ferrous anchorages.
- B. Clamps, Straps, and Washers: Steel, ASTM A 506.
- C. Rods: Steel, ASTM A 575.
- D. Rod Couplings: Malleable-iron, ASTM A 197.
- E. Bolts: Steel, ASTM A 307.

- F. Cast-Iron Washers: Gray-iron, ASTM A 126.
- G. Thrust Blocks: Concrete, 3,000 psi.

2.8 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Thrust Blocks, Hydrant Supports, and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 Examination: Examine areas and conditions under which potable water system's materials and products are to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in manner acceptable to Installer.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Identification: During back-filling/top-soiling of underground fire water piping systems, install continuous underground-type plastic line marker, located directly over buried line at 6" to 8" below finished grade. If pvc pipe is used, install a tracer wire along the top of the pipe, secured with tape, and extending to fire hydrants and valves.
- B. Pipe and pipe fittings:
 - 1. Pipe: Install in accordance with AWWA C600 "Standard for Installation of Ductile-Iron Water Mains and Their Appurtenances".
 - 2. Depth of Cover: Provide minimum depth of cover over underground piping in accordance with NFPA 24, Figure A-8-11 "Recommended Depth of Cover Above Top of Underground Yard Mains" or 54" below finish grade, whichever is greater.
- C. Piping Specialties:
 - 1. Pipeline Strainers: Install as indicated, with valved blowoff piped to drain.
- D. Meters: Install as indicated with shutoff valve on either side of meter and valved bypass full line size.

- E. Valves: Provide post indicator for control valves.
 - 1. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve ahead of each hydrant.
- F. Hydrants: Install fire hydrants in accordance with AWWA M17 "Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Fire Hydrants".
 - 1. Location: Install fire hydrants minimum of 40'-0" from building outside wall, as indicated, or if not shown.
 - 2. Face hydrants towards drive.
 - 3. Place hydrants so that base of hydrant is even to 6-inches above adjacent top back of curb.

3.4 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe:
 - 1. Ductile Iron Pipe: Install in accordance with AWWA C600 "standard for installation of ductile-iron water mains and their appurtenances" and in accordance with instructions from water purveyor.
 - 2. Copper Tube: Install in accordance with CDA "Copper Tube Handbook".
 - 3. PVC Pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
- B. Depth of Cover: Provide minimum cover over piping of 12" below average local frost depth or 36" below finished grade, whichever is greater.
- C. Water Main Connection: Arrange and pay for tap in water main, of size and in location as indicated, from water Purveyor.
- D. Water Service Termination: Terminate potable water piping 5'-0" from building foundation in location and invert as indicated. Provide temporary pipe plug for piping extension into building.
 - 1. Mark location with surface marker.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground water pipes. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- C. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- D. Install piping according to the following:
 - 1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.

2. Install piping with line and grade as indicated or below frost line if not indicated.
3. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
4. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
5. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
6. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with stems pointing up. Provide valve box over underground valves.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF WATER METER AND VAULT

- A. Install Water Meter and Vault to comply with City Water Department Standards.

3.8 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results for Utilities." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Join pressure piping according to the following:
 1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 3. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
 4. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered, and after thrust blocks have sufficiently hardened. Fill pipeline with water 24-hrs prior to testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 200 psi for 2-hrs, or at 50 psi above maximum static pressure if it is greater than 150 psi.
 1. Test fails if leakage exceeds 2-qts per hour per 100 gaskets or joints irrespective of pipe diameter.
 2. Increase pressure in 50 psi increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for one hour, decrease to 0 psi. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for one more hour.

- C. Operating Tests: Open and close all valves and hydrants under system water pressure. Check dry barrel hydrants for proper drainage.
 - 1. For systems with fire pumps, run pumps during operating tests.

3.10 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Disinfection of Potable Water System: Flush pipe system with clean potable water until no dirty water appears at point of outlet. Fill system with water-chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Valve off system and let stand for 24- hrs minimum. Flush with clean potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
 - 1. Repeat procedure if contamination is present in bacteriological examination.
- B. Disinfection of Water Mains: Flush and disinfect in accordance with AWWA C651 "Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains".
 - 1. Contractor shall submit written verification to Project Manager stating, Disinfection has been completed in strict compliance with specification for this project and with jurisdiction having authority over water system.

3.11 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Flushing: Flush underground mains and lead-in connections to sprinkler risers before connection is made to sprinklers, standpipes, or other fire protection system piping.
 - 1. Flush at flow rate not less than that indicated in NFPA 24, or at hydraulically calculated water demand rate of the system, whichever is greater.
- B. Adjusting: adjust fire hydrants to face street and be have base 2-6 inches above adjacent curb and gutter.

3.12 CLOSING ABANDONED WATER SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

END OF SECTION 33 11 00

SECTION 33 31 00 - SANITARY SEWERAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, non-pressure sanitary sewerage outside the building, with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Drains.
 - 4. Precast concrete manholes.
 - 5. Cast in place manhole bases over existing pipes.
 - 6. Sewerage Pipes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure, Sewer-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water. Pipe joints shall be at least watertight under specified head, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Special pipe fittings.
 - 2. Cleanout materials.
 - 3. Pipes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers. Include design calculations, and concrete design-mix report for cast-in-place manholes.

- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
- D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1-inch equals 60 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1-inch equals 8 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic pipe and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service. Coordinate interruptions during weekly meetings and at pre-construction meeting.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission.
 - 3. If shutdown will affect city streets, other city utilities, or city sewer line, do not proceed without approval from city.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include local pre-cast manufacturers but are subject to approval of the engineer and architect.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pressure Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150 for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 - 1. Fittings NPS 4 to NPS 8: PVC pressure fittings complying with AWWA C907, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 - 2. Fittings NPS 10 and Larger: Ductile-iron, compact fittings complying with AWWA C153, for push-on joints and using AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.
- B. PVC Water-Service Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 80 pipe, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints with ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, socket-type fittings.
- C. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- D. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 18 and Larger: ASTM F 679, T 2 wall thickness, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- E. PVC Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 794 pipe, with bell-and-spigot ends; ASTM D 3034 fittings, with bell ends; and ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.4 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Use non-pressure type couplings only when pipes can not be connected together with standard fittings and typical pipe connections such as bell and spigot. If possible, file the end on existing pipes to create spigot type connections to match existing pipe ends for connection to a new bell for an extension of the pipe.
- B. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- C. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
 - 2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 3. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 4. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- D. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - e. NDS Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

E. Shielded Flexible Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

F. Ring-Type Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fernco Inc.
 - b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

2.5 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include 2 gasketed ball-joint sections and 1 or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.

B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.

- C. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psi minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - b. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - c. JCM Industries.
 - d. Smith-Blair, Inc.

2.6 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light, Medium, Heavy, and Extra-heavy duty depending on location and expected driving load on cleanout.
3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

- B. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping. Place in grey iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Canplas Inc.
 - b. Josam Company
 - c. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - d. Wad Div.; Tyler Pipe
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Zern Industries, Inc; Zern Specification Drainage Operation
 - g. IPS Corporation.
 - h. NDS Inc.
 - i. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - j. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - k. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

2.7 MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated and as needed for pipe sizes.
 2. Portland Cement Design Mix: 5000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
 3. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
 4. Base Section: 9-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 5. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 6. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
 7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
 8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
 9. Steps: Not used.
 10. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 11. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 12. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
 - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile or ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated and to match existing manhole frames and covers.
 - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes Base: Construct of reinforced-concrete bottom according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete, as required to prevent flotation.
 2. Excavate around existing pipe where manhole is to be placed.
 3. Place new pipe stub at line and grade and stubbed into new manhole location with pipe extending towards existing pipes.
 4. Place CMU blocks or other approved support adjacent to pipes to support new barrel section.
 5. Set first barrel section on CMU blocks and verify that barrel section is level in all directions and is not sitting on pipes.
 6. Make sure that hole is deep enough that the depth of concrete will be 9-inches below existing and new pipes.
 7. Place concrete around barrel section and inside barrel section so that the existing and new pipes are at least 50% covered with concrete.
 8. Hand form trough as needed.

9. Let concrete cure and break out of pipes for trough. Grout all troughs smooth and even with pipes.
10. Stack remaining barrel sections and add cone, ring and cover etc. as indicated for precast manhole.

2.8 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 5000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
 1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.
- C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 5000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
 1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Use non-pressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, non-pressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Flexible or rigid couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
 - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible or rigid couplings for pipes with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
 2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints. **(Not Used)**

- B. Special Pipe Fittings: Use for pipe expansion and deflection. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure Sewer Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. PVC sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Ductile-iron pressure pipe, ductile-iron standard or compact fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 3. PVC pressure, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 4. PVC pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- F. Install gravity-flow, non-pressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at slope indicated.
 - 2. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction for pressure pipe. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 - 3. Install piping with cover indicated.
 - 4. Notify engineer of clearance problems that would result in changes to grade and alignment.
 - 5. Install ductile-iron culvert piping according to ASTM A 716.
 - 6. Install ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 - 7. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 - 8. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results for Utilities." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Join gravity-flow, non-pressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join ductile-iron culvert piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 - 3. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cement joints.
 - 4. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
 - 5. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
 - 6. Join dissimilar pipe materials with non-pressure-type flexible or rigid couplings.
- C. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use same pipe type as sewer line that the cleanout is connected to. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
 - 1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 - 2. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
 - 3. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 - 4. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 12 inches around outside of cover. At contractors' option, a square block can be used that is at least 12-inches wider than the cover. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.6 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Construct cast-in-place manhole bases as indicated.
- D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary sewer system.
- B. Connect force-main pressure piping to building's force mains where indicated. **(Not Used)**
 - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 4000 psi.
 - 2. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.9 CLOSING ABANDONED SEWER DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least **8-inch**-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
 - 1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
 - 2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least **36 inches** below final grade. Fill to within **12 inches** of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
- C. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.10 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
 - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 - f. Test for infiltration or exfiltration between manholes as follows:
 - 1) Clean section of sewer line of dirt. Debris, gravel, rocks and other items.
 - 2) Fill section between manholes with water. Allow water to sit in pipe for not less than 3-hours to acclimate to surrounding earth temperature.
 - 3) Use a water pump to pressurize the sewer pipe section to not less than 5 psi and not more than 10 psi. Record starting pressure.
 - 4) Turn off water pressure and wait 20 minutes.
 - 5) Refill pipe to same pressure as in step 3 and measure volume required to fill pipe to same pressure.
 - 6) Pipe section passes test if volume required to refill pipe is less than ½-gallon per 400 feet of 8-inch pipe. Prorate the allowable seepage larger or smaller pipes and for shorter or longer distances.
 - 7) Find and fix leaks in any section that fails to pass test. Fix any visible leaks found even if section of pipe passes test.
 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
- C. Test pressure piping to same standard as water pipes in section 331100. **(Not Used)**
1. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 2. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials.

END OF SECTION 33 10 00

SECTION 33 41 00 - STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, non-pressure storm drainage outside the building, with the following components:
 - 1. Special fittings for expansion and deflection.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Drains.
 - 4. Precast concrete manholes, inlet boxes, catch basins.
 - 5. Cast in place inlet boxes and catch basins and manhole bases over existing pipes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- B. CP: Non-reinforced concrete pipe.
- C. RCP: Reinforced concrete pipe.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water. Pipe joints shall be at least silt tight, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Special pipe fittings.
 - 2. Drains.
 - 3. Storage.
 - 4. Pipes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers. Include design calculations, and concrete design-mix report for cast-in-place manholes.

2. Catch Basins and Stormwater Inlets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames, covers, and grates.
 3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames and covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix report.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures. Show tunnel sections and pipe locations in tunnel including water, sewer, storm drain, secondary water, and any electrical lines.
- D. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1-inch equals 50 feet and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle catch basins and stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service. Coordinate interruptions during weekly meetings and at pre-construction meeting.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Owner's written permission

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include local pre-cast manufacturers but are subject to approval of the engineer and architect.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PRESSURE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe: AWWA C151, for push-on joints.
- B. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
- C. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
- D. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pressure Pipe: AWWA C900 and AWWA C905, Class 200 for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 1. Fittings NPS 4 to NPS 8: PVC pressure fittings complying with AWWA C907, for gasketed joints and using ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
 2. Fittings NPS 10 and Larger: Ductile-iron, compact fittings complying with AWWA C153, for push-on joints and using AWWA C111, rubber gaskets.
- B. PVC Water-Service Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 80 pipe, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints with ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, socket-type fittings.
- C. PVC Cellular-Core Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 891, Sewer and Drain Series, PS 50 minimum stiffness pipe with ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, socket-type fittings for solvent-cemented joints.
- D. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- E. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 18 and Larger: ASTM F 679, T 2 wall thickness, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

- F. PVC Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 794 pipe, with bell-and-spigot ends; ASTM D 3034 fittings, with bell ends; and ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

2.6 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Nonreinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 14, Class I, II or III, with bell-and-spigot ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
- B. Piping in paragraph below is available in 5 classes and 3 wall thicknesses, and in NPS 12 to NPS 144. Not all classes and wall thicknesses are available. Joints are gasket type. Contractor, at his option, may use non-reinforced pipe for sizes up to 21-inches if structural requirements based on load on pipe are not exceeded for that pipe. If reinforced pipe is selected, choose the pipe class and wall thickness to suit availability and structural requirements based on loads and cover.
- C. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76, with bell-and-spigot ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443, rubber gaskets.
 - 1. Class I, Wall [A] [B].
 - 2. Class II, Wall [A] [B] [C].
 - 3. Class III, Wall [A] [B] [C].
 - 4. Class IV, Wall [A] [B] [C].
 - 5. Class V, Wall [B] [C].

2.7 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground non-pressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
 - 2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 3. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 4. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - e. NDS Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

- D. Shielded Flexible Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
- E. Ring-Type Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fernco Inc.
 - b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

2.8 PRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

- A. Reducing or transition, metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - g. Viking Johnson.
 - 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - 4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- C. Split-Sleeve Couplings: With split sleeve with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brico Industries.
 - 2. Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.

4. Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

2.9 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include 2 gasketed ball-joint sections and 1 or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.
- B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- C. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - b. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - c. JCM Industries.
 - d. Smith-Blair, Inc.

2.10 CLEANOUTS

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.

- g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
 2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light, Medium, Heavy, and Extra-heavy duty depending on location and expected driving load on cleanout.
 3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
- B. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping. Place in grey iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Canplas Inc.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

2.11 DRAINS

- A. Gray-Iron Area Drains: ASME A112.21.1M, 12" nominal round body with anchor flange and round secured grate. Include bottom outlet with inside calk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Wade Div.; Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Enpoco, Inc. Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Engineer approved equal.
 2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Medium duty light driving load.
 3. Body: Nyloplast, PVC, Precast Concrete, or engineer approved equal.
 4. Location: Use in landscape areas, grass/sod areas. Do not use in future parking lot areas.

2.12 MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated and as needed for pipe sizes.

2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
 3. Base Section: 9-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 5. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
 6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
 7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
 8. Steps: Not used.
 9. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 11. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."
 - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile or ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated and to match existing manhole frames and covers.
 - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Bolt down lid with gasket as indicated.
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete Manholes: Construct of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete, as required to prevent flotation.
 2. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
 3. Steps: Not used.
 4. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 5. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 6. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."
 - a. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile or ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated and to match existing frames and covers.
 - b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint 15-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

2.13 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.
- C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

2.14 CATCH BASINS

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
1. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 2. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 3. Top Section: Flat-slab-top type with hole for frame and grate is indicated.
 4. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
 5. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 6. Grade Rings: Include 2 or 3 reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch total thickness, that match frame and grate.
 7. Steps: Not Used.
 8. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section. Size sections and box or manhole to fit pipes without necessary.
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Catch Basins: Construct of reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
1. Bottom, Walls, and Top: Reinforced concrete.
 2. Channels and Benches: Concrete.
 3. Steps: Not used.
- C. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
1. Size: 24 by 24 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.

- A. Standard Precast Concrete or nlyoplast Area Drains: precast, reinforced concrete or nyloplast, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
 - 1. Base Section: 2-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 2-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 - 2. Riser Sections: 2-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 - 3. Top Section: Flat-slab-top type with hole for frame and grate is indicated.
 - 4. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
 - 5. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 - 6. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section. Size sections and box or manhole to fit pipes without necessary.
- B. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading.
 - 1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.

2.16 STORMWATER INLETS

- A. Gutter Inlets: Horizontal gutter opening, of materials and dimensions indicated. Include heavy-duty frames and grates. All grates to be bicycle safe.
- B. Combination Inlets: Vertical curb and horizontal gutter openings, of materials and dimensions indicated. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.

2.17 PIPE OUTLETS

- A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.
- B. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregular size and shape, graded stone according to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."
- C. Filter Stone: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size, graded stone.
- D. Energy Dissipaters: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use non-pressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, non-pressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Flexible or rigid couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
 - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible or rigid couplings for pipes with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
 - 2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.
- B. Special Pipe Fittings: Use for pipe expansion and deflection. Pipe couplings and special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure Sewer Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. PVC water-service pipe; PVC Schedule 40, water-service-pipe fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. PVC sewer pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 3. Class [1] [2] [3], nonreinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 4. Ductile-iron culvert pipe, ductile-iron standard or compact fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
 - 5. Reinforced-concrete sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
- D. Force-Main Pressure Piping: Use any of the following pipe materials for each size range:
 - 1. Ductile-iron pressure pipe; ductile-iron standard or compact fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. PVC pressure pipe, PVC pressure fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.
- F. Install gravity-flow, non-pressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at slope indicated.
 - 2. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction for pressure pipe. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 - 3. Install piping with cover indicated.
 - 4. Notify engineer of clearance problems that would result in changes to grade and alignment.
 - 5. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
 - 6. Install ductile-iron culvert piping according to ASTM A 716.
 - 7. Install ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 - 8. Install PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 - 9. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 - 10. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 - 11. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
 - 12. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
- G. Install force-main pressure piping according to the following:
 - 1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 - 2. Install piping with line and grade as indicated or below frost line if not indicated.
 - 3. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 - 4. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
 - 5. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
 - 6. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic pipe joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results for Utilities." Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Join gravity-flow, non-pressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join ductile-iron culvert piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 - 3. Join corrugated steel sewer piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
 - 4. Join corrugated aluminum sewer piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
 - 5. Join corrugated PE piping according to CPPA 100 and the following:

- a. Use silt tight couplings for Type 1, silt tight joints.
 6. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cement joints.
 7. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
 8. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
 9. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
 10. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
 11. Join dissimilar pipe materials with non-pressure-type flexible or rigid couplings.
- C. Join force-main pressure piping according to the following:
1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C660 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 3. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
 4. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use same pipe type as sewer line that the cleanout is connected to. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 2. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
 3. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 4. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 12 inches around outside of cover. At contractors option, a square block can be used that is at least 12-inches wider than the cover. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.6 DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification drains in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 2. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification drains in paved foot-traffic areas.
 3. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification drains in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 4. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification drains in roads areas.

- B. Embed drains in 4-inch minimum depth of concrete around bottom and sides.
- C. Fasten grates to drains if indicated.
- D. Set drain frames and covers with tops flush with pavement surface.
- E. Assemble trench sections with flanged joints.
- F. Embed trench sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.7 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Construct cast-in-place manholes as indicated.
- D. Install PE sheeting on earth where cast-in-place-concrete manholes are to be built.
- E. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.
- C. Align boxes so that frame and grates are square to adjacent sidewalks, curbs or roadways.

3.9 STORMWATER INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION

- A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
- B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
- C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
- D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
- E. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.10 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

3.11 DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble and install components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
- C. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.
- D. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
- E. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.
- F. Assemble channel sections with flanged or interlocking joints.
- G. Embed channel sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect non-pressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Connect force-main pressure piping to building's storm drainage force mains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.
 - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
 - 2. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- C. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Interceptors."

3.13 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch-thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:

1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 36 inches below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.

C. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.

1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Re-inspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.
5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
 - a. Exception: Piping with soil tight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.

- c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.
 - 6. Force-Main Storm Drainage Piping: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig
 - a. Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
 - b. PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
 - C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.
- 3.16 CLEANING
- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials.

END OF SECTION 334100